TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	**Before driving**	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column
2	**When driving**	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information
3	**Interior features**	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience
4	**Maintenance and care**	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information
5	**When trouble arises**	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident
6	**Vehicle specifications**	Detailed vehicle information
7	**For owners**	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners, and seat belt and SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For information regarding the navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

1 Before driving

1-1. Key information

Keys 30

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart access system with push-button start 35
Wireless remote control 49
Side doors 52
Back door 56

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 67
Rear seats 71
Driving position memory system 83
Head restraints 87
Seat belts 91
Steering wheel 100
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 102
Outside rear view mirrors 104

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 108
Moon roof 111

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 116

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 119
Alarm 121

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 124
SRS airbags 126
Front passenger occupant classification system 140
Child restraint systems 146
Installing child restraints 151

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 166
Engine (ignition) switch 177
Automatic transmission 181
Turn signal lever 189
Parking brake 190
Horn 191

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 192
Indicators and warning lights 196
Multi-information display 200

2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 208
Automatic High Beam 213
Fog light switch 220
Windshield wipers and washer 222
Rear window wiper and washer 228
Headlight cleaner switch 231

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 232
Dynamic radar cruise control 236
Intuitive parking assist 251
Rear view monitor system 262
Lexus parking assist monitor 270
Wide view front & side monitor 303
4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 320
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) 331
Four-wheel drive system 332
Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function) 337
Multi-terrain Select 344
Driving assist systems 349
Pre-Collision System 357

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions 363
Cargo and luggage 368
Vehicle load limits 375
Winter driving tips 376
Trailer towing 381
Dinghy towing 401

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen 404
Set up screen 412
Information screen 429
Voice command system..... 431
Mobile Assistant..... 442

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front air conditioning system 444
Rear air conditioning system 456
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 460
Windshield wiper de-icer..... 461

3-3. Using the audio system

Audio system type 462
Using the radio..... 487
Using the CD/DVD player..... 507
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs..... 509
Playing DVD video..... 515
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information..... 529
Listening to Bluetooth® audio..... 541
Listening to a USB memory 552
Listening to an iPod..... 562
Optimal use of the audio/video system..... 572
Using the AUX port 574
Using the steering wheel audio switches 576

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system features 579
Using the radio..... 587
Using the radio (internet radio broadcast)..... 589
Playing an audio CD/CD text..... 590
Playing WMA/MP3 discs 591
Playing a Bluetooth® audio..... 593
Playing a USB memory 596
Playing iPod..... 598
Playing DVD video..... 600
DVD player and DVD video disc information 609
Using the video mode 611

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 616
Using a Bluetooth® phone 625
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone) 648
Setting the Bluetooth® 673

3-6. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 686
• Interior lights 687
• Personal lights 688
• Luggage compartment light 689

3-7. Using the storage features

List of storage features 690
• Glove box 691
• Console box 692
• Overhead console 693
• Cup holders 694
• Bottle holders 696
• Card holder 697
• Auxiliary boxes 697

3-8. Other interior features

Cool box 699
Sun visors 701
Vanity mirrors 702
Ashtrays 703
Cigarette lighter 704
Power outlets 705
Heated steering wheel 707
Seat heaters and ventilators 709
Armrest 712
Assist grips 713
Floor mats 714
Luggage compartment features 716
Garage door opener 718
Safety Connect 726

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 734
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 737

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 740
General maintenance 743
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 746

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 747
Hood 750
Engine compartment 751
Tires 766
Tire inflation pressure 775
Wheels 779
Air conditioning filter 781
Electronic key battery 784
Checking and replacing fuses 786
Light bulbs 803

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 816
If your vehicle needs to be towed 817
If you think something is wrong 824
Fuel pump shut off system 825

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 826
If a warning message is displayed 837
If you have a flat tire 854
If the engine will not start 868
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 870
If you lose your keys 871
If the electronic key does not operate properly 872
If the battery is discharged 875
If your vehicle overheats 878
If the vehicle becomes stuck 881
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 883

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 886
Fuel information 897
Tire information 901

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 912

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 923

7 For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 926
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 927
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 929

Index

Abbreviation list **940**
Alphabetical index **942**
What to do if... ..... **952**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Pictorial index

Exterior



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Pictorial index

Interior



Seat belts P. 91

Power window switches P. 108

Ashtray P. 703

Armrest P. 712

Head restraints P. 87

SRS driver airbag P. 126

SRS front passenger airbag P. 126

Rear seats P. 71

Rear air conditioning controls P. 456

Power outlet P. 705

Rear seat entertainment system* P. 579

Floor mats P. 714

Front seats P. 67

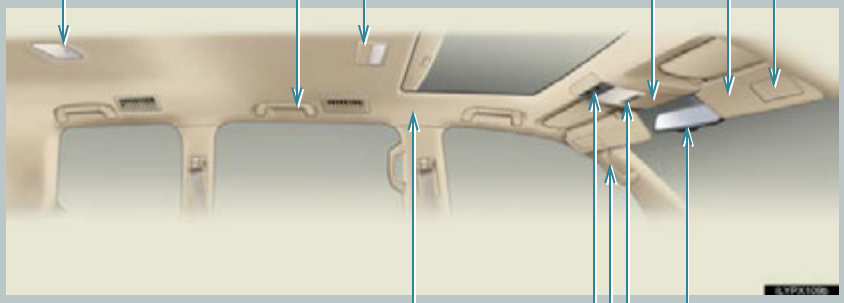
SRS side airbags P. 126

Console box* P. 692

Cool box* P. 699

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

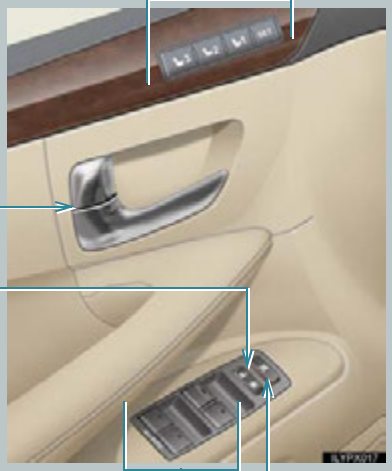
A



*: If equipped

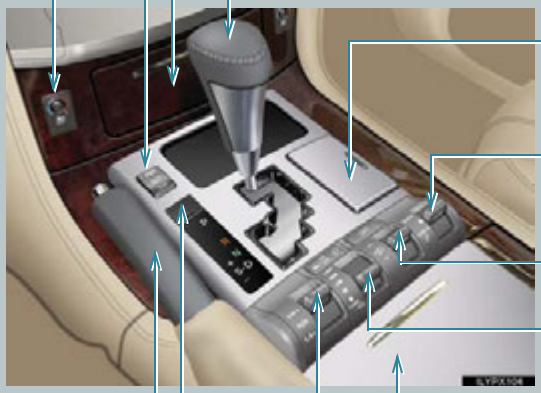
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

B



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

C



Front seat heater/ventilator switch* P. 709

ECT switch P. 183

Ashtray P. 703

Cigarette lighter P. 704

Shift lever P. 181

AUX port/USB port P. 552, 562, 574

Power outlet P. 705

AVS switch P. 331

Height select/height control OFF switches P. 320

Crawl Control switch P. 337

Multi-terrain Select mode select switch P. 344

Cup holders P. 694

Four-wheel drive control switch P. 332

Shift lock override button P. 870

Parking brake lever P. 190

*: If equipped

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Pictorial index

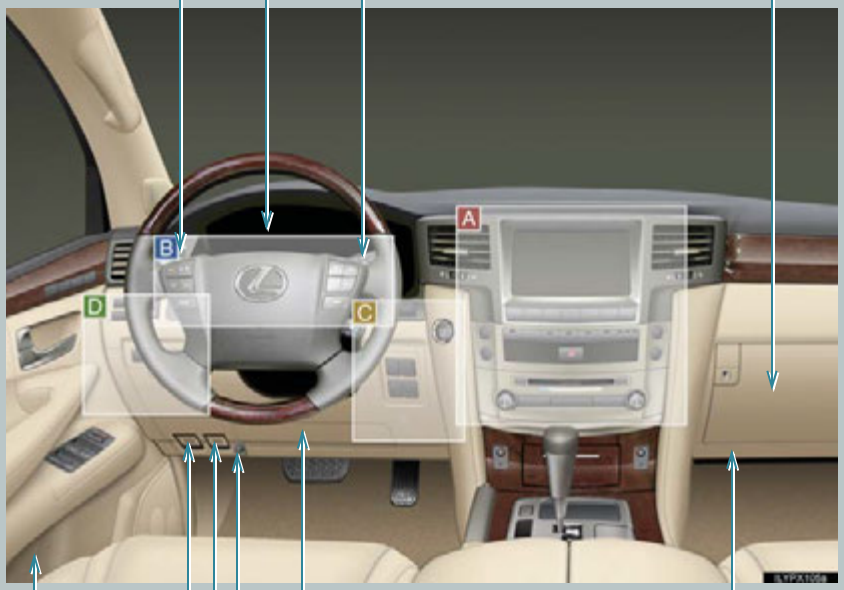
Instrument panel

Headlight switch P. 208
Turn signal lever P. 189
Fog light switch P. 220

Gauges and meters P. 192
Multi-information display P. 200

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 222
Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 228

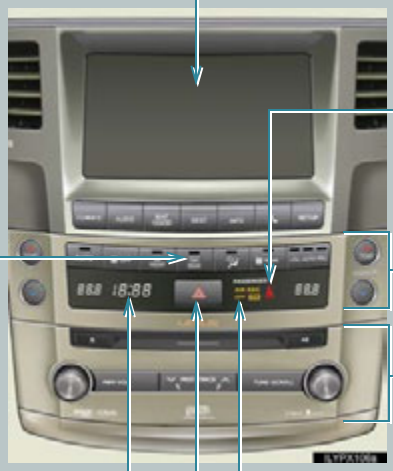
Glove box P. 691



SRS knee airbags P. 126
Tire pressure warning reset switch P. 768
Hood lock release lever P. 750
Fuel filler door opener P. 116
Bottle holder P. 696

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A

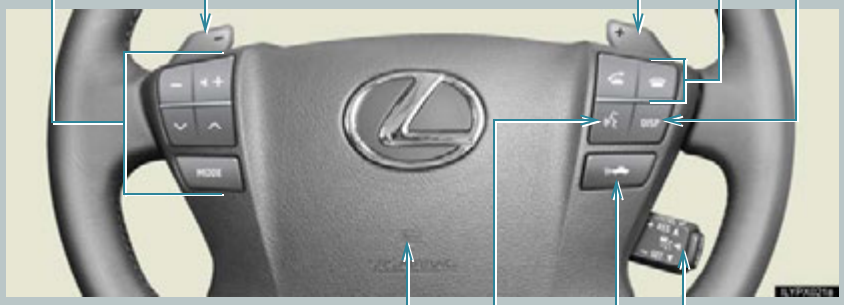


*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

B

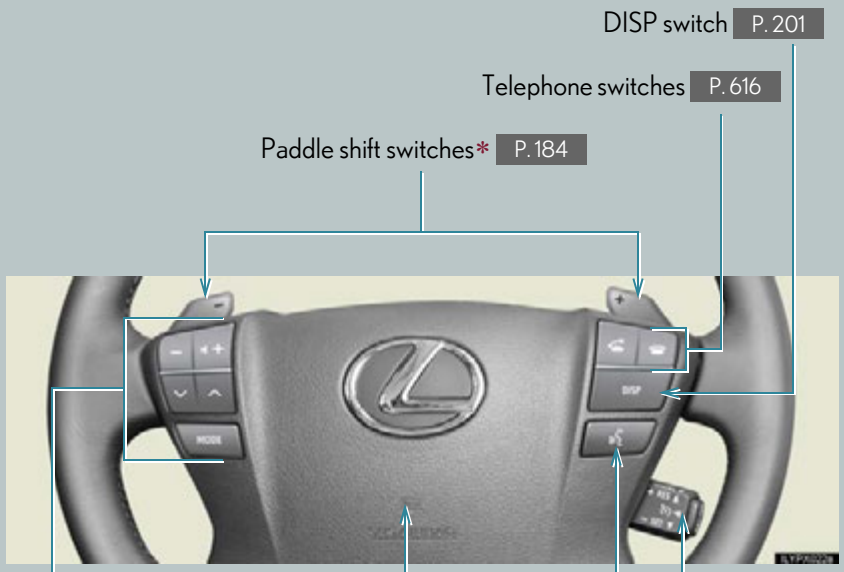
▶ Type A



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

B

▶ Type B



*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

C



Engine (ignition) switch P. 177

Intuitive parking assist switch* P. 251

VIEW switch* P. 303

Easy access mode switch P. 323

Center differential lock/unlock switch P. 332

Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch P. 139

Power back door main switch P. 57

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

D



Headlight cleaner switch* P. 231

Instrument panel light control dial P. 194

Odometer/trip meter display change button P. 193

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 100

Power back door switch P. 57

AFS OFF switch P. 210

Auxiliary box P. 697

VSC OFF switch P. 351

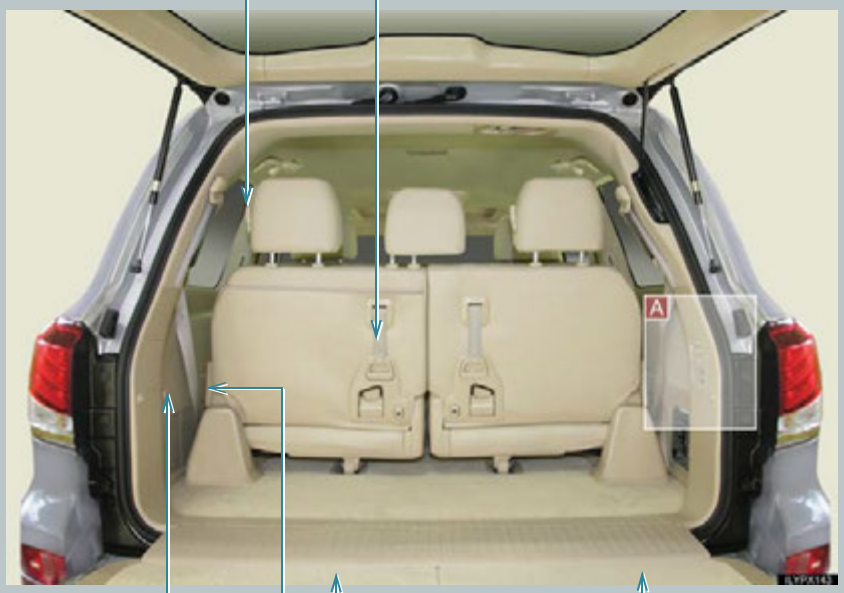
Heated steering wheel switch* P. 707

Outside rear view mirror control switches P. 104

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Luggage compartment



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A



Third seat return switch P. 78

Third seat tumbling switch P. 77

Third seat table mode switch P. 76

Luggage compartment light P. 689

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle data recordings

Your Lexus is equipped with several sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Shift position

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped. Furthermore, these computers do not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in these computers to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

● Usage of data collected through Safety Connect / Lexus Enform (U.S. mainland only)

If your Lexus has Safety Connect or Lexus Enform and if you have subscribed to those services, please refer to the Safety Connect / Lexus Enform Telematics Subscription Service Agreement for information on data collected and its usage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause death or serious injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of death or serious injury to yourself and others.

⚠ NOTICE

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations



Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before driving 1

1-1. Key information

Keys 30

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart access system with push-button start 35

Wireless remote control 49

Side doors 52

Back door 56

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 67

Rear seats 71

Driving position memory system 83

Head restraints 87

Seat belts 91

Steering wheel 100

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 102

Outside rear view mirrors 104

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 108

Moon roof 111

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 116

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 119

Alarm 121

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 124

SRS airbags 126

Front passenger occupant classification system 140

Child restraint systems 146

Installing child restraints 151

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 35)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 49)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

Card key (if equipped)



1 Electronic key

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 35)

2 Mechanical key

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 872)

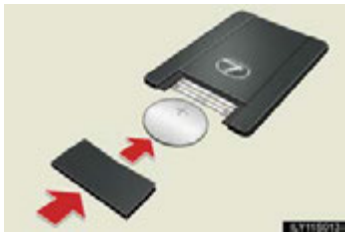
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only in an emergency, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.



- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.

- The card key is not waterproof.

When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 691)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a key is lost, a new mechanical key can be made by your Lexus dealer, using the key number plate. (→P. 871)

When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent key damage

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in a ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not place the key near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

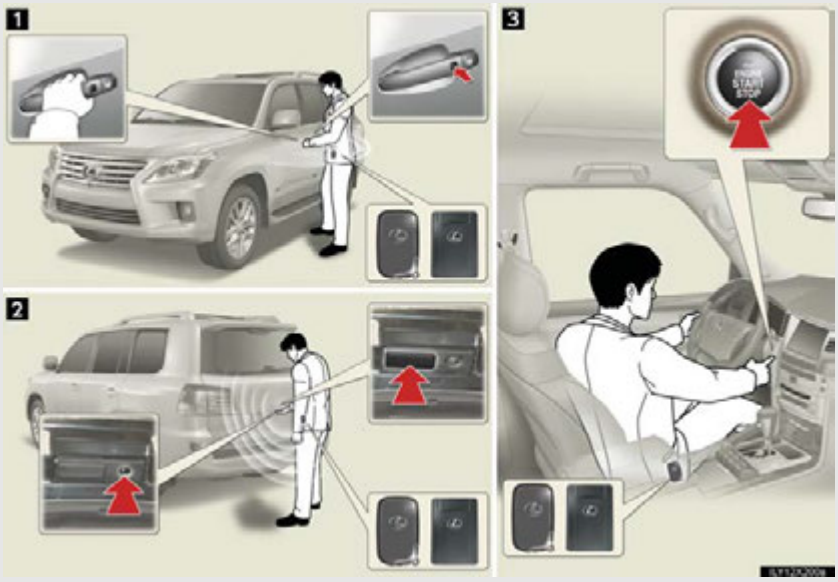
■ **Precautions for handling the card keys**

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals.
  (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp it and pull.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 36)
2 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 36)
3 Starts and stops the engine (→P. 177)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Unlocking and locking the doors

▶ Side door handle



Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Grip the passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed. (→P. 41)



Press the lock button to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows and moon roof. (This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Back door



Press the unlock button to unlock the doors.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle. The back door will not lock automatically after it has been opened and then closed.



Press the lock button to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Antenna location and effective range

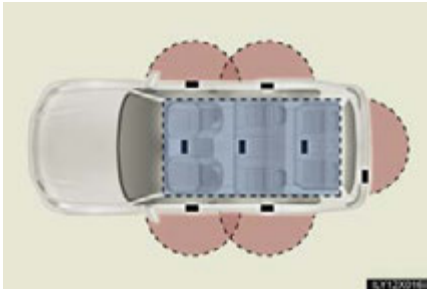
Antenna location



1 Antennas outside cabin
2 Antennas inside cabin
3 Antenna outside luggage compartment

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When starting the engine or changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

Operation signals

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are closing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 872)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic object
  - Card to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying or using the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the key surface is turned off, press and hold for approximately 5 seconds while pressing on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat STEP 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps three times Interior: Rings once
	Hold either door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 121)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle and electronic key batteries from discharging.

- When the entry function has not been used for 2 weeks or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when...

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function (→P. 49) or the mechanical key. (→P. 872)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
  (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 44)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always receives radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control function does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 784)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Induction cookers
  - Table lamps

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, floor or in the glove box when the engine is started or "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle operation may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ **Alarms and warning indicators**

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in ACCESSORY mode)	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door
	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned OFF while the driver's door was open	Close the driver's door
Interior alarm sounds continuously*1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in "P"	Shift the shift lever to "P" and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously*1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever not in "P"	Shift the shift lever to "P", turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once*1	The electronic key has a low battery	Replace the electronic key battery
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally	Start the engine with the electronic key present*2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times*1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not OFF	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle

*1: A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving signal from the key. (→P. 40)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 872)
- Starting the engine: →P. 873

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 784

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 912)

■ **Certification for the smart access system with push-button start**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A., Hawaii, Guam and Puerto Rico

FCC ID:NI4TMLF-5

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system antennas. (→P. 39)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

■ When using the smart access system with push-button start and operating the power windows and moon roof

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in power window and moon roof.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from outside the vehicle.



1 Locks all doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

2 Unlocks all doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

4 Opens/closes the back door (press and hold)

5 Sounds alarm (press and hold) (→P. 123)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operation signals**

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

■ **Operating conditions**

The wireless remote control will not operate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in any position other than OFF.

■ **Door lock buzzer**

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Power back door operation**

The power back door can be opened while the vehicle is locked. (one motion)

■ **Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the door will set the alarm system.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 42

■ **Security feature**

→P. 44

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 872)
- Starting the engine: →P. 873

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 784

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 40

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Certification for wireless remote control**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQ14AEM

FCC ID: HYQ14ABB

FCC ID: HYQ13BZS

FCC ID: HYQ14ABK*

FCC ID: HYQ14ABS*

FCC ID: HYQ13CZA*

*: For U.S. mainland only

NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows and moon roof**

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in power window and moon roof.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

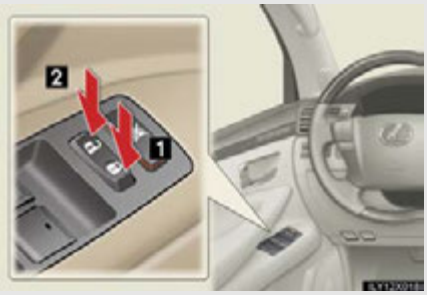
Entry function

→P. 36

Wireless remote control

→P. 49

Door lock switch



1 Locks all doors
2 Unlocks all doors

Inside lock button



1 Locks the door
2 Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking the driver's door from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

Depending on the position of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

1 Unlock

2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P. 912

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of "P" locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 45 seconds after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 872)

Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.
  Be especially careful of the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

Locking and unlocking the back door

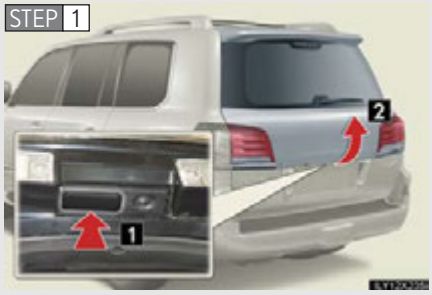
▶ Door lock switch
→P. 52

▶ Entry function
→P. 36

▶ Wireless remote control
→P. 49

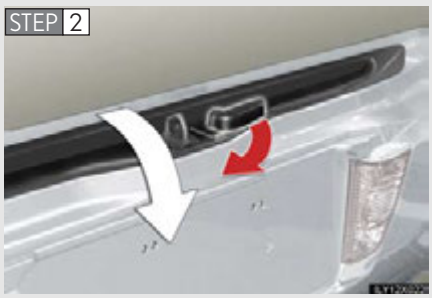
Opening the back door from outside the vehicle

STEP 1



1 Unlock the back door
2 Raise the back door

STEP 2



Pull the handle

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Opening the back door from inside the vehicle



The power back door can be opened/closed using the power back door switch or wireless remote control. (→P. 49)

Push and hold the switch to close or open. (A buzzer sounds.)

Power back door switch



Pressing the switch closes upper back door automatically. (A buzzer sounds.)

Pressing the switch while the upper back door is closing opens it again.

Canceling the power back door system



Turn the main switch to disable the power back door system.

1 Inoperative

2 Operative

The back door cannot be operated even with the wireless remote control or power back door switch.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When closing the back door



- Make sure that the lower side of the back door is closed before closing the upper side of the back door.
- Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.
- The buzzer sounds once when the power back door closer begins to close the lower side of the back door.

Rear step bumper



The rear step bumper is for rear end protection and easier step-up loading.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The power back door can be opened/closed when

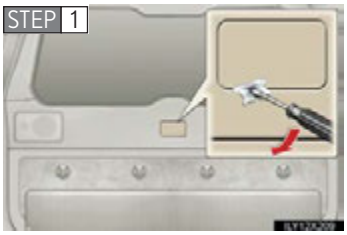
The back door can be opened automatically when the power back door main switch is on, and the following conditions are met.

- The power back door is unlocked (except closing operation)
- The lower back door is closed (closing operation only)
- To open the power back door when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the power back door is unlocked, the vehicle speed must be lower than 1 mph (3 km/h) and the shift lever must be in "P".

If the back door opener is inoperative

The back door can be operated from the inside.

STEP 1



Remove the cover on the back door trim.

Use a cloth to prevent scratches.

STEP 2



Push the lever for the back door motor, open the back door.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Jam protection function**

- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing/opening, the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction.
- If the lower back door is opened while the upper back door is in a closing operation, it automatically opens again.

■ **When re-connecting the battery**

To enable the power back door to operate properly, perform the following:

- Unlock the back door using the door lock switch
- Close the back door manually

■ **Back door closer**

In the event that upper side and lower side of the back doors are left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

■ **Fall-down protection function**

While the power back door is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the power back door from rapidly falling down.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. switch operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.



- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ Back door closer



- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.
- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is cancelled.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is turned off with the main switch while the back door is operating automatically, the automatic operation is stopped. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close unexpectedly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to the IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.
- In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to turn off the power back door main switch. Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

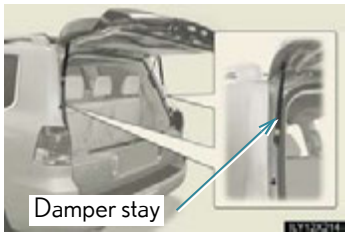
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

To prevent back door closer malfunction

Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating.

To prevent damage to the power back door

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not operate in automatic operation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front seats



1 Seat position fore/aft control switch
2 Seatback angle control switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle control switch
4 Vertical height control switch
5 Lumbar support control switch
6 Seat cushion length adjustment switch (driver's side only)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power easy access system

When the driver enters and exits the vehicle, the driver's seat and steering wheel will automatically perform the following operations:



Exiting the vehicle: When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward (auto away function):

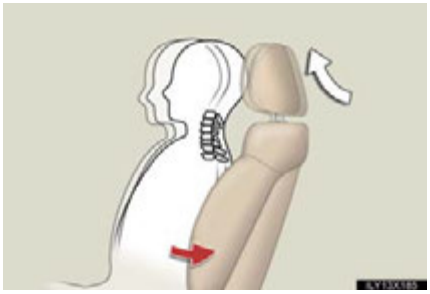
- The shift lever has been shifted to P
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off
- The driver seat belt has been unfastened

Entering the vehicle: When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward (auto return function):

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode
- The driver seat belt has been fastened

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Active head restraint



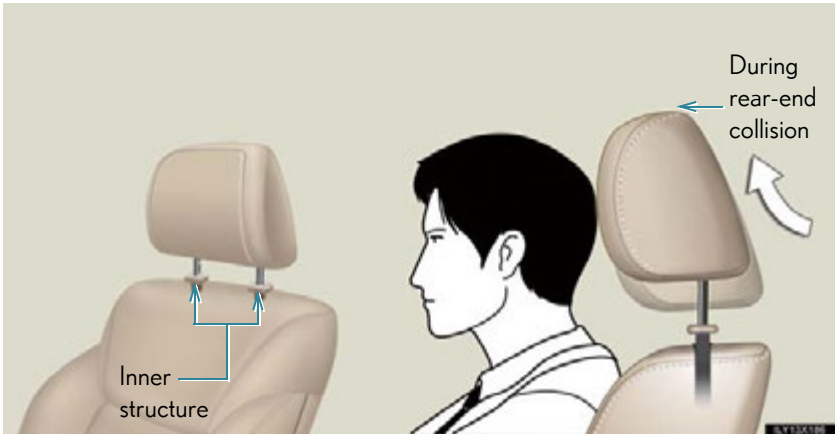
When the occupant's lower back presses against the seatback during a rear-end collision, the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash on the seat occupant.

The auto away function for exiting the driver seat

If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

Active head restraint

Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move. Pushing up a locked head restraint forcibly may make the inner structure of the head restraint appear. This does not indicate a problem.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customization

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 912)

⚠ CAUTION

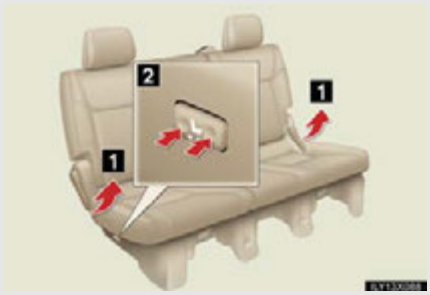
Seat adjustment

- Be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or luggage.
- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
  If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seats

▶ Second seat



1 Seatback angle adjustment lever

2 Seat position adjustment switch

▶ Third seat



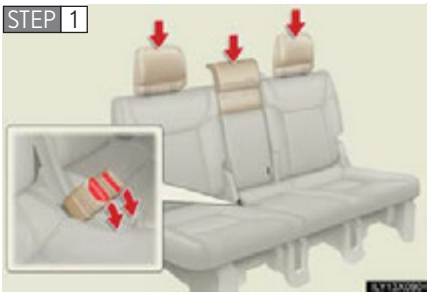
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tumbling the second seats and third seat entry

For easy access to the third seat, perform STEP 1 in "Tumbling the second seats" (→P. 73).

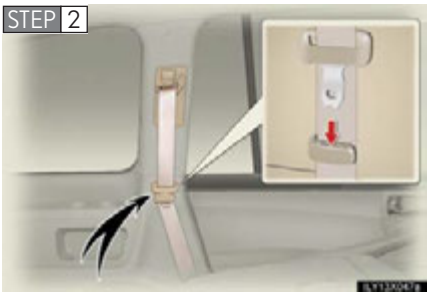
Before tumbling the second seats

STEP 1



Stow the seat belt buckles and lower the head restraints to the lowest position.

STEP 2



Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

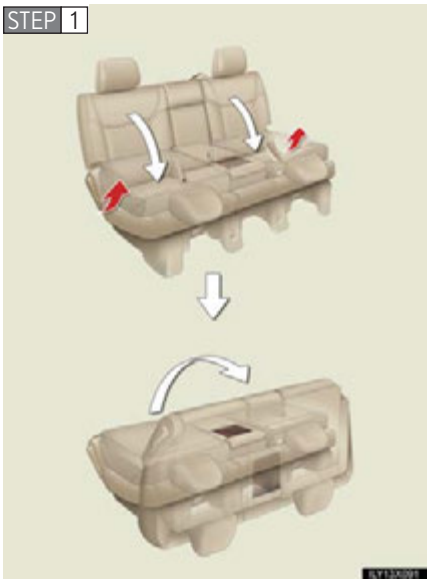
This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

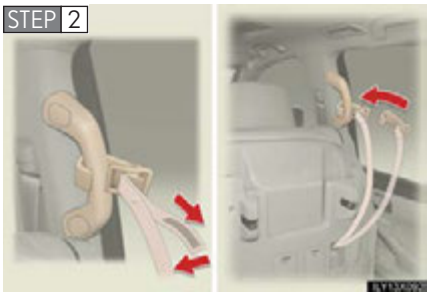
Tumbling the second seats

STEP 1



Fold down the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever, and swing the whole seat up and forward.

STEP 2

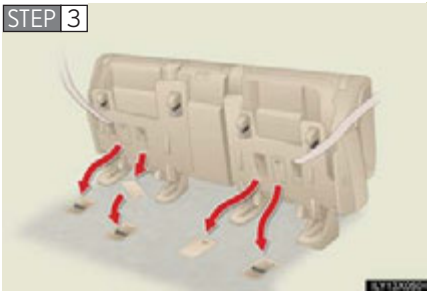


Hook the holding strap to the assist grip and secure the seat by pulling its free end.

When returning the second seat to its original position, stow the holding strap.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3

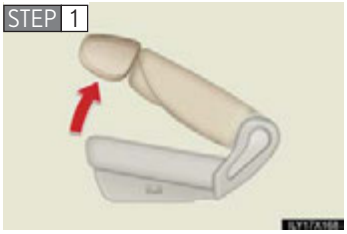


Remove the seat hook covers from the back of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

When returning the second seat to its original position, remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them in the back of the seat cushion.

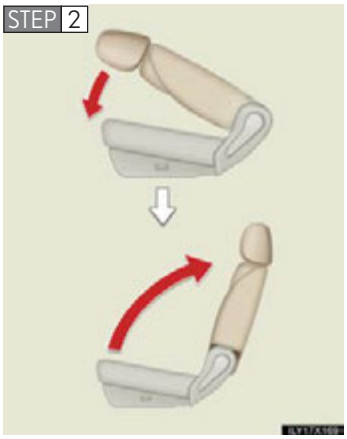
If you cannot raise the left side seatback

STEP 1



Lift the seatback until it stops.

STEP 2



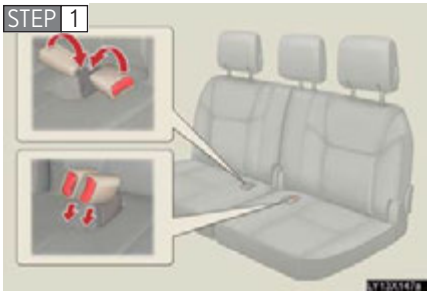
Lower the seatback a little then lift it again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding the third seats

Before folding the third seats

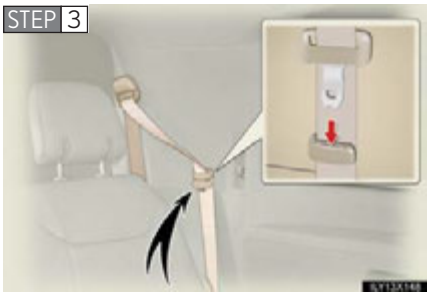
STEP 1



Stow the seat belts buckles.

STEP 2 Stow the center head restraint in the seatback. (→P. 90)

STEP 3



Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

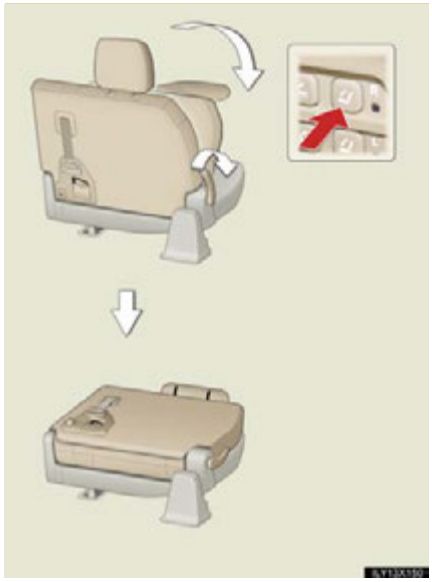
STEP 4 Stow the center seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof. (→P. 93)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding down the third seatback



1 For right side
2 For left side



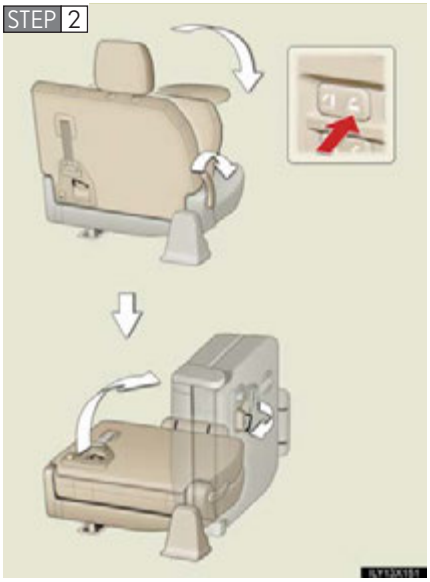
The seat will automatically fold when the switch is pressed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding up the third seats

STEP 1 Perform following steps in “Before folding the third seats”. (→P. 75)

STEP 2



If the switch is pressed and held, the seat will automatically fold and lift sideward. (The buzzer sounds twice when the seat is about to lift.)

If the switch is released while the seat is lifting sideward, operation will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.

Before operating, make sure that the handle on the rear of the seat-back is secure.

STEP 3



Remove the seat hook covers from the underside of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

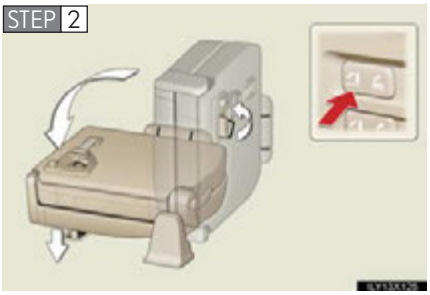
Returning the third seats

STEP 1



Remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them into the underside of the seat cushion.

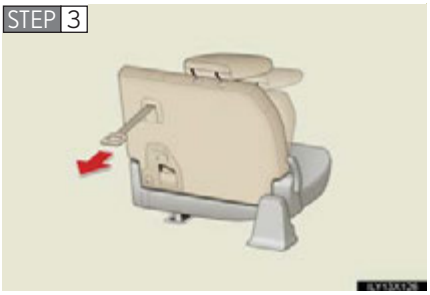
STEP 2



If the switch is held down the seat will automatically return to the folding position. (Buzzer sounds twice)

If the switch is released while returning to the folding position, operation will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.

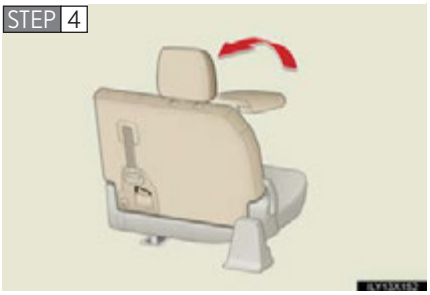
STEP 3



Pull the handle and raise the seatbacks.

Fix the handle securely in its original position after use.

STEP 4



Raise the head restraints.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Alarms and indicators**

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sound.

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light on*	Shift lever is not in the "P" position with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode. Stop the switch operation during the automatic third seat is in motion.	Move the shift lever in the "P" position with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode. Return the third seat from a halfway position to tumbling position or the original position with the third seat return switch or third seat tumbling switch.
Indicator light flashes*	The seat movement is stopped in a half way when the back door is opened.	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light flashes*	Automatic tumbling or return operation is stopped because of a system problem.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	The seat is not moved to the table mode from the original position after 10 seconds the tumbling switch is pressed.	Check something is caught between the seat cushion and seatback. If nothing is caught, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light blinks slowly*	Automatic closing operation is stopped because of a system problem.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Indicator light flashes	Any of the tumbling or return switch is pushed when shift lever is not in the "P" position with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode.	Move the shift lever in the "P" position with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode.
Indicator light flashes 3 times	Table mode switch is pushed when shift lever is not in the "P" position with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode.	

*: A warning will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

■ When the seatback is folded

- Do not sit on or place anything on the seatback while driving.
- Be sure to install the seat hook covers on the seat hooks, or you may get burned when they become hot.

■ When returning the seatbacks to their original position

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Be careful not to get your hands or feet pinched in the seat.
- Make sure the seats are securely locked. Failure to do so will prevent the seat belt from operating properly.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught under the seat.
- Arrange the seat belts in the proper positions for ready use.

■ Avoiding damage to seat components

Do not hang or attach anything on the seatback striker.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before tumbling, folding up the seats

The seat belts and buckles must be stowed.

■ After returning the third seat

Make sure that the handle on the rear of the seatback has been secured.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving position memory system

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be entered into the computer's memory and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3



While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press and hold button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2



Press button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the desired position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

▶ Using the wireless remote control

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF after closing the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), press on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, open and close a door once after a driving position has been recorded. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 121)

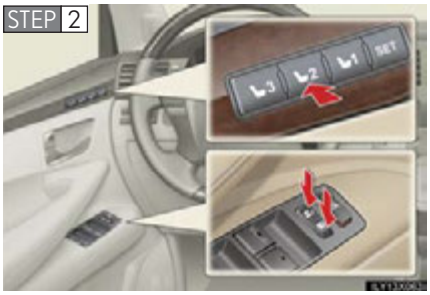
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Using the door lock switch

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF after closing the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF after closing the driver's door.

STEP 2 Using the wireless remote control: While pressing "SET" button, press button on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

Using the door lock switch: While pressing "SET" button, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the signal beeps.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Retained accessory power**

- Each memorized position (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated within 3 minutes after the driver's door is opened, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.
- Each memorized position (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated within 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.

■ **To cancel seat position recall**

Perform any one of the following operations.

- Press the "SET" button
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall)
- Adjust the steering wheel using the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall)

■ **If the battery is disconnected**

The memorized positions must be reset because the computer's memory is erased when the battery is disconnected.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

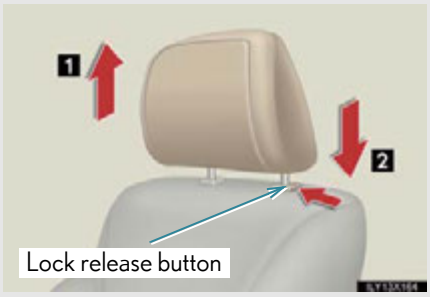
Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

▶ Front seats



Vertical adjustment

1 Up

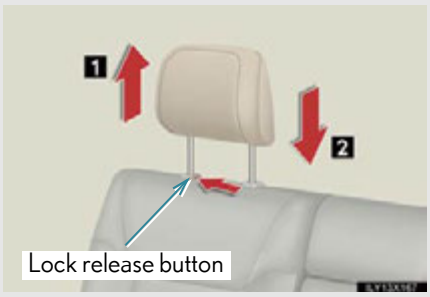
2 Down

Push the head restraint up or down while pressing the lock release button.



Angle adjustment (if equipped)

▶ Second seats



Vertical adjustment

1 Up

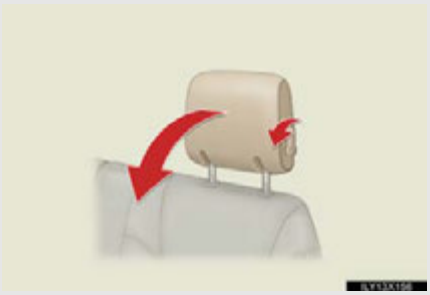
Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Third outboard seats



To fold

Pull the head restraint angle lever to fold the head restraint.

■ **Adjusting the height of the head restraints**



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

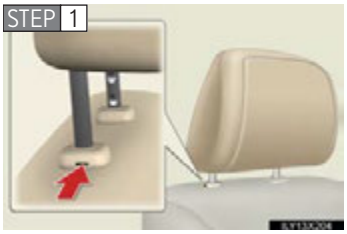
■ **Adjusting the second center seat head restraint**

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Removing the head restraints

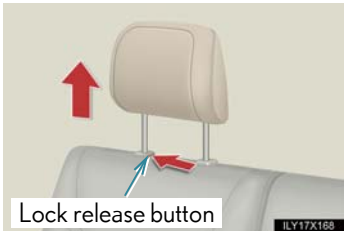
▶ Front seats



Push a flathead screwdriver into the slot. The slot is located on the right side of the right head restraint anchor.

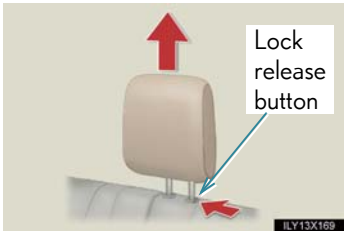
STEP 2 While pressing in the flathead screwdriver, pull up the head restraint.

▶ Second seats



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Third center seat



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Third outboard seats

The head restraint cannot be removed.

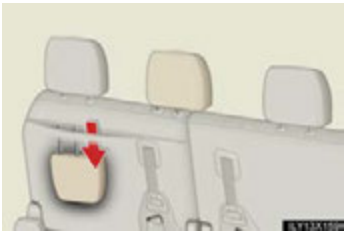
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Installing the head restraints (except third outboard seats)**

STEP 1 Align the head restraint with the installation holes.

STEP 2 Push down the head restraint to the lock position.

■ **When not using the third center seat head restraint**



Open the zipper on the back of the third seat and stow the head restraint inside.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Head restraint precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat belts

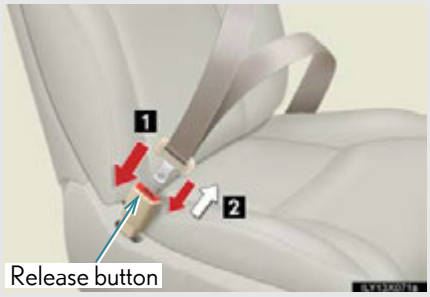
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 Fastening the belt

Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

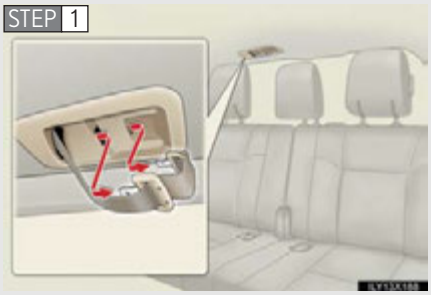
2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

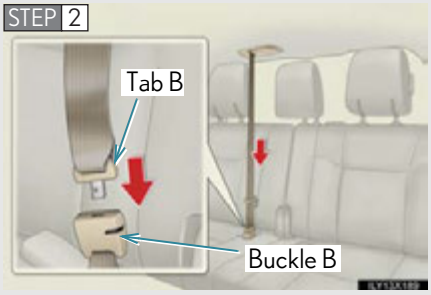
Fastening and releasing the third center seat belt

STEP 1



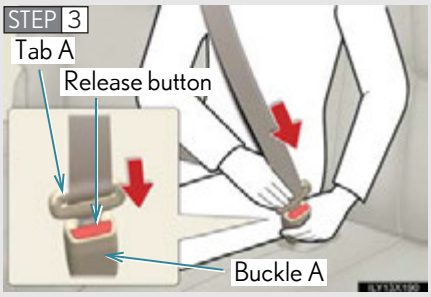
Pull out the tab

STEP 2



Push tab B into buckle B until a clicking sound is heard

STEP 3



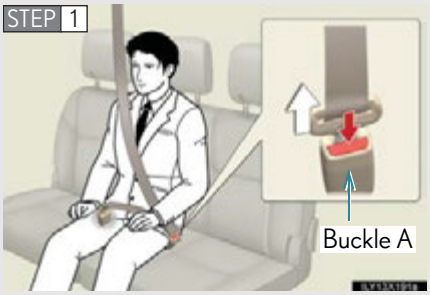
Push tab A into buckle A until a clicking sound is heard

To release, push the release button on buckle A.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

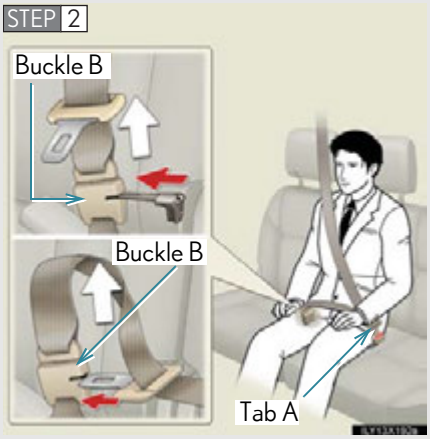
Releasing and storing the third center seat belt

STEP 1



Push the release button on buckle A

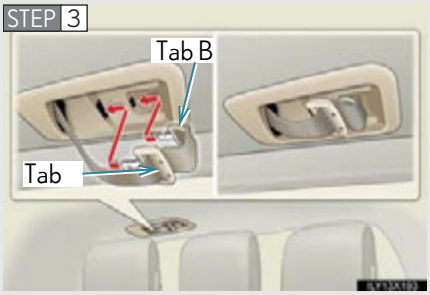
STEP 2



Push either the mechanical key or tab A into buckle B

When releasing and storing the seat belt, hold the belt while winding it back gently.

STEP 3



Put tabs A and B together and stow them in the holder

To reattach the seat belt, reverse the above procedure, pulling out the tabs and inserting tab B into buckle B.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the height of the belt (front and second outboard seats)



1 Down

2 Up

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and second outboard seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the front seat belts will retract before the collision. (→P. 357)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 151)

When the third center seat belt cannot be extended



Put your fingers between the seat belt and the holder.

Pull the seat belt forcefully in the direction of the arrow and then release it to unlock.

Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 146)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 91 regarding seat belt usage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

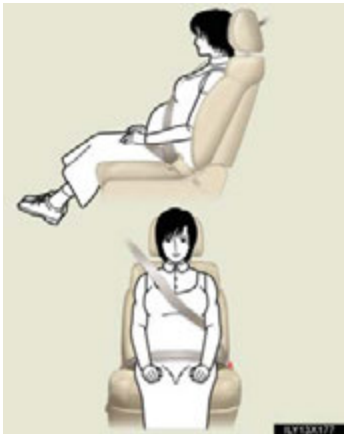
Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 91)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision.

People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 94)

■ When using the third center seat belt



Do not use the third center seat belt with either buckle released. Fastening only one of the buckles may result in death or serious injury in case of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belt cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender, if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system, because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

⚠ NOTICE

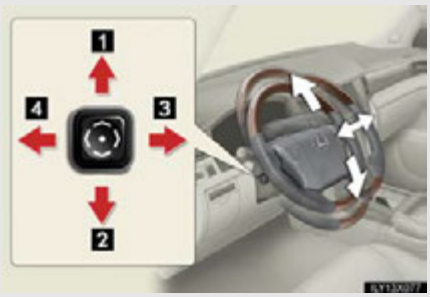
■ When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode or when the driver's seat belt is fastened.



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

Auto tilt away



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF and the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode or fastening the driver's seat belt will return the steering wheel to the original position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 83)

CAUTION

While driving

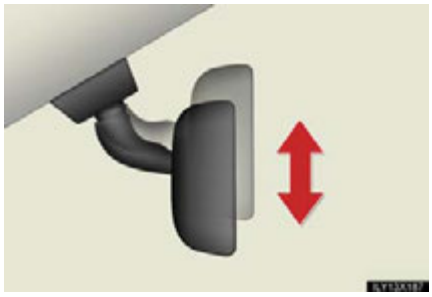
Do not adjust the steering wheel.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

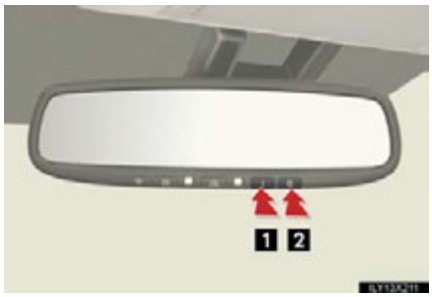
The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view in accordance with the driver's seating posture.

Adjusting the height of the rear view mirror



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

Automatic anti-glare function



Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

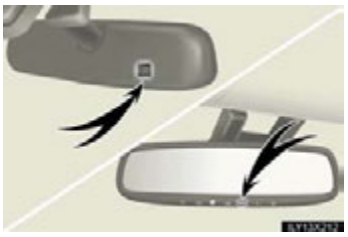
1 ON

2 OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates.
The function will be set to ON mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

CAUTION

While driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted.

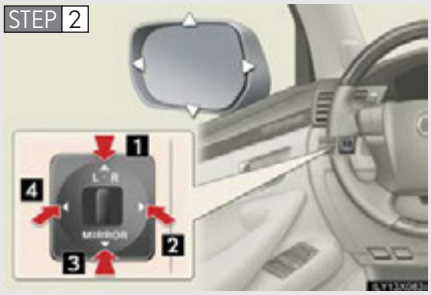
STEP 1



Select a mirror to adjust

1 Left
2 Right

STEP 2



Adjust the mirror

1 Up
2 Right
3 Down
4 Left

Folding back the mirrors



1 Folds the mirrors
2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Linked mirror function when reversing

When the mirror select switch is in the L or R position, the outside rear view mirror will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between L and R).

Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized tilt position of mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Mirror angle can be adjusted when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the mirrors are fogged up**

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 460)

■ **Auto anti-glare function**

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to auto mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 102)

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 83)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

⚠ NOTICE

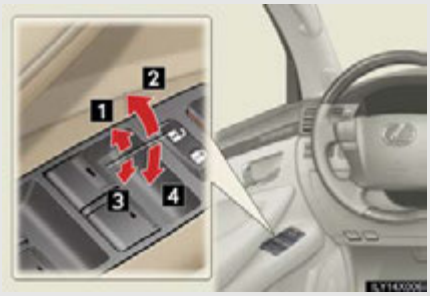
■ If ice should jam the mirror

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

The power windows can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Door lock linked window operation

The following functions can be used if customized at your Lexus dealer.

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 872)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 49)
- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 36)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **When the power window does not close normally**

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

CAUTION

Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 108)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the smart access system, wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also, do not let a child operate window by the smart access system, wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

Opening and closing



1 Open

Stops just before it is opened fully. Press the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

Tilt up and down



1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

The following functions can be used if customized at your Lexus dealer.

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 872)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 49)
- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 36)

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **If the moon roof cannot be closed automatically**

Keep the switch depressed.

■ **To reduce moon roof wind noise**

When the moon roof is opened automatically, it will stop slightly before the fully open position. Driving with the moon roof in this position can help reduce wind noise.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument panel when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

⚠ CAUTION

Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- When using the smart access system, wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the smart access system, wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel. (→P. 117)

Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1



Pull the lever.

STEP 2



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Closing the fuel tank cap



After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.

Fuel types

Use unleaded gasoline (Octane Rating 91 [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity.
  Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap.
  In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Failure to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been can-

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine immobilizer certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

⚠ NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or using mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.

Setting the alarm system



Close the doors and hood, and lock all doors.
The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors.
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ **Items to check before locking the vehicle**

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ **Triggering of the alarm**

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.
If the battery is disconnected before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

■ **Alarm-operated door lock**

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

■ **Panic mode**



When is pressed for longer than about one second, the head lights/tail lights/emergency flashers will flash, the front and rear interior lights will come on, and an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the wireless remote control.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



1 Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 67)

2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 67)

3 Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.

4 Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 100)

5 Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 87)

6 Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 91)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

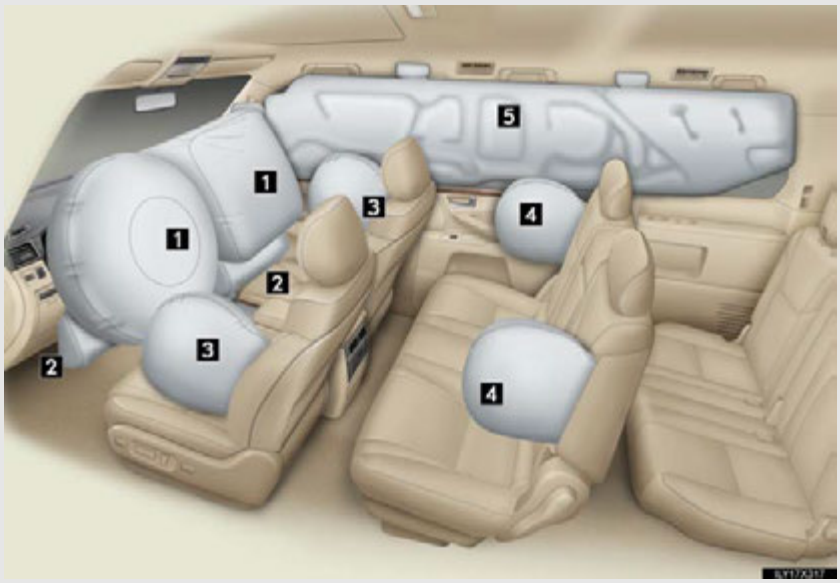
■ Adjusting the seat position

- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
  If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.
- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



▶ SRS front airbags

1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

2 SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

3 SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

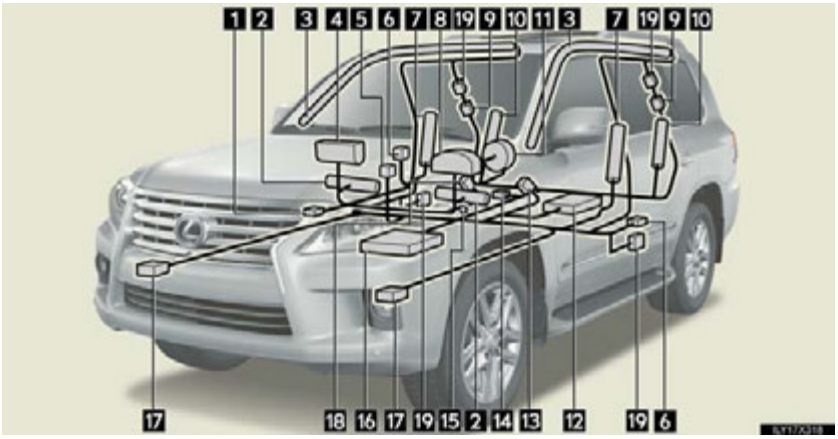
4 SRS rear side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the second outboard seat occupants.

5 SRS curtain shield airbags

- Can help protect primarily the head of front seat occupants.
- Can help protect primarily the head of second outboard seat occupants.
- Can help protect primarily the head of third seat occupants.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Airbag system components



1 Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU & sensors)
2 Knee airbags
3 Curtain shield airbags
4 Front passenger airbag
5 AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights
6 Side impact sensors (front door)
7 Side airbags (front seats)
8 SRS warning light and "RSCA OFF" indicator light
9 Side impact sensors (rear)
10 Side airbags (second outboard seats)
11 Driver airbag
12 Driver's seat position sensor
13 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
14 Safing sensor (rear)
15 Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch
16 Airbag sensor assembly
17 Front impact sensors
18 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
19 Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on the US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag sensor assembly (ECU) controls airbag deployment based on information obtained from the sensors etc. shown in the system components diagram above. This information includes crash severity and occupant information. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with nontoxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, second seats, and parts of the front, center and rear pillars, and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 726)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbag will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- The SRS front airbags for the front passenger will not activate if there is not a passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front airbags for the front passenger may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied.

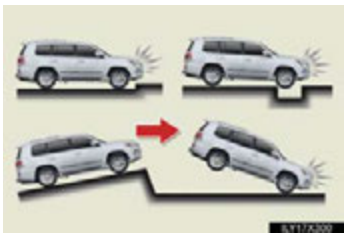
■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).
- The SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of vehicle rollover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling

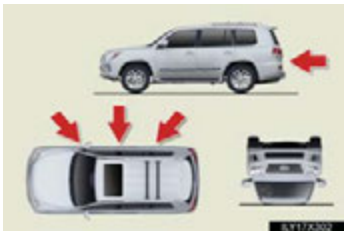
The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.



- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits curb stone.

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

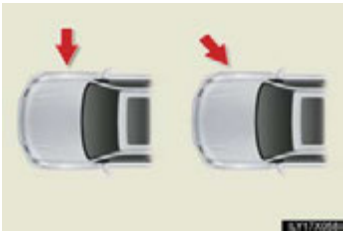


- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side airbags and curtain shield airbags)**

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



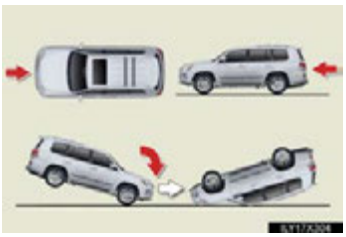
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



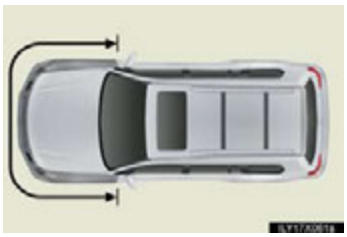
- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Pitching end over end

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

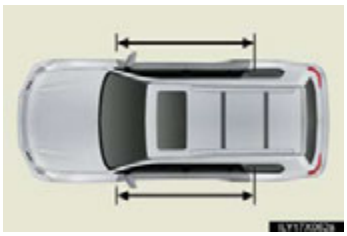
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



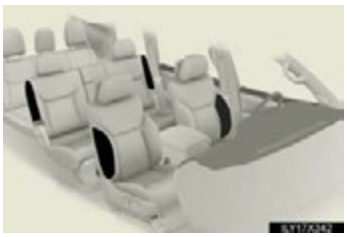
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



- The portion of the front, side and rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags is inside scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the front seat belt buckles but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the seat belt, the SRS front airbags will judge that the driver and front passenger are wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the SRS front airbags may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 146)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, center and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield glass, side door glass, front, center and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.

- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.
The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rail
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Deactivating the curtain shield airbags in a vehicle rollover



ON/OFF (hold for a few seconds)

The RSCA OFF indicator turns on (only when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

The roll sensing function for the curtain shield airbags and seat belt pretensioners will turn back on automatically each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

This switch only should be used

In a situation where the inflation is not desired (such as during extreme off road driving).

Operating conditions when the RSCA OFF indicator is on

- The curtain shield airbag and seat belt pretensioner will not activate in a vehicle rollover.
- The curtain shield airbag will activate in a severe side impact.
- The pretensioner will activate in a severe frontal collision.

⚠ CAUTION

While normal driving

Make sure the RSCA OFF indicator is not turned on. If it is left on, the curtain shield airbag will not activate in the event of an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



1 SRS warning light
2 AIR BAG OFF indicator light
3 AIR BAG ON indicator light
4 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Activated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

Child*3 or child restraint system*4

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"*5
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Deactivated

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

System malfunction

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*4: Never install a real-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A rear-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 146)

*5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual as for installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 151)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, the SRS airbags for the passenger may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the second seat.
- Do not let a second seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a second seat. This may cause the AIR BAG OFF indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the second seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the second seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the second seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 151)
- Do not modify or remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Child restraint systems installed on the second seat should not contact the front seatbacks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the LATCH anchors or the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one on the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 151)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child:

▶ Rear facing–Infant seat/convertible seat



▶ Forward facing–Convertible seat



▶ Booster seat



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ When installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat



When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward and highest position
- The seat belt height to the lowest position

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belts.
- If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 91)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child, resulting in serious injury or even death.

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerving or accident.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure the child restraints to the outboard second seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.



Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the outboard second seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt)



Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all second seats.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installation with LATCH system

STEP 1



Fold the seatback forward and then adjust it as upright as possible.

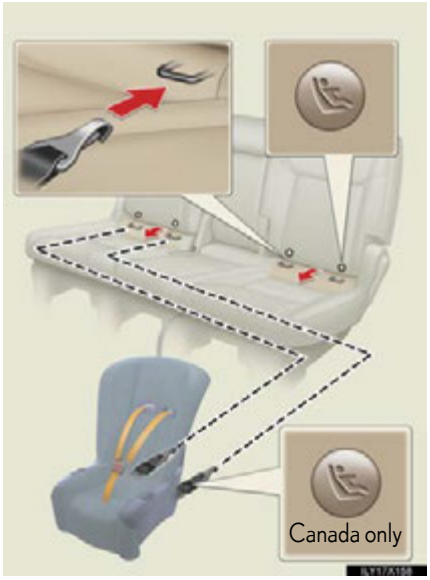
STEP 2



Take off the covers between the seat cushion and seatback, then confirm the position of the LATCH anchors below the symbol in the seatback.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type A

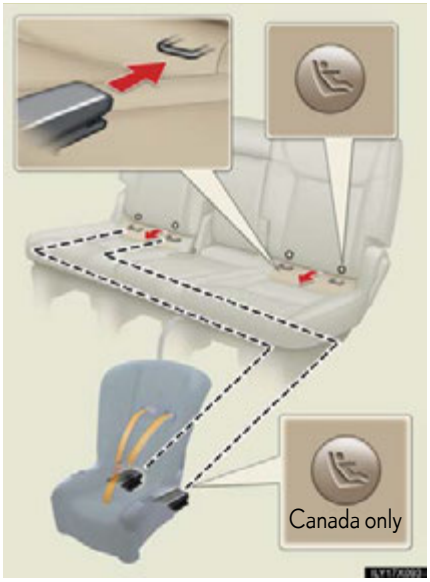


STEP 3 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

▶ Type B



STEP 3 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

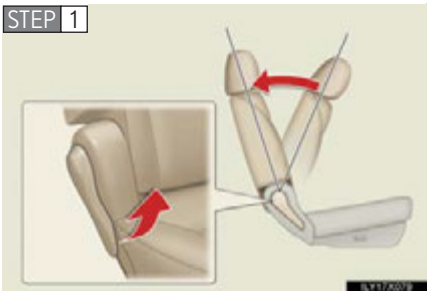
For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

Rear-facing — Infant seat/Convertible seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 71)

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the second seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

STEP 5



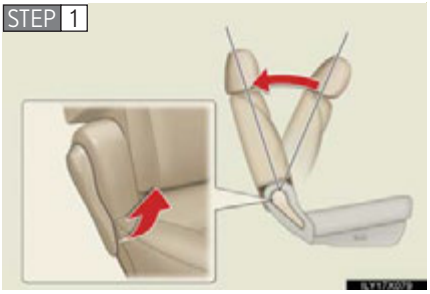
While pushing the child restraint system down into the second seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Forward-facing — Convertible seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 71)

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

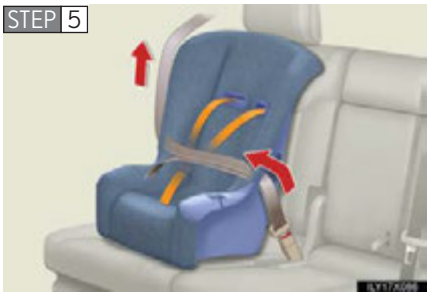
STEP 4



Fully extend the shoulder strap and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

STEP 5



While pushing the child restraint system into the second seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

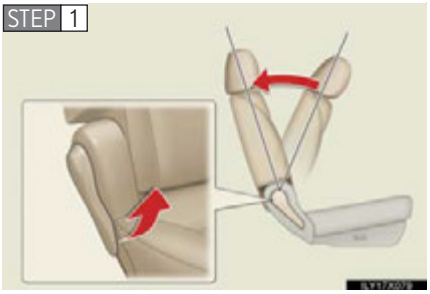
After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 6 If the child restraint system has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 152)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Booster seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position.

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 91)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

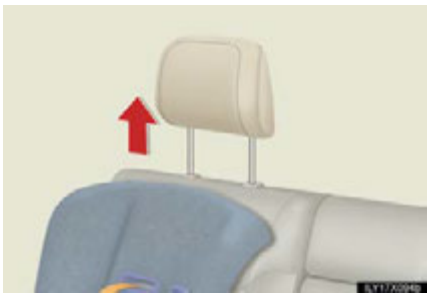


Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

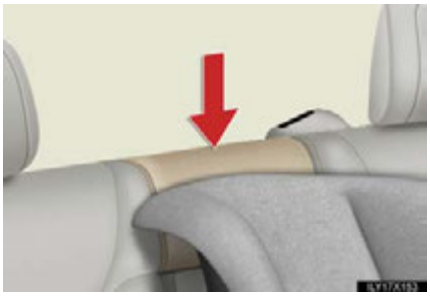
STEP 1 Secure the child restraint system using a seat belt or LATCH anchors, and do the following.

▶ Outside



Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

▶ Center

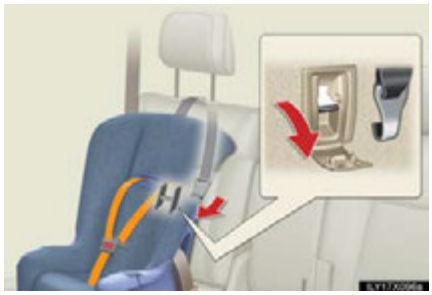


Lower the head restraint to the lowest position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 2 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

▶ Outside

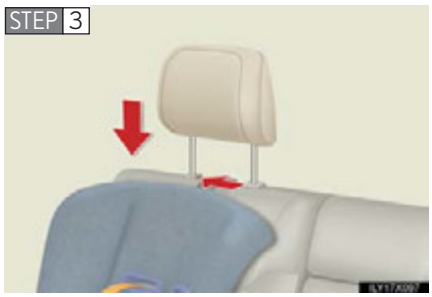


Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.

▶ Center



STEP 3



Outside only: Adjust the head restraint to the downmost position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Laws and regulations pertaining to Anchors

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.
Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

CAUTION

When installing a booster seat

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 95)

ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand second seat.
- Child restraint system installed on the third seat should not contact the second seat-

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

When installing a child restraint system



- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing or booster child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).
- When using the LATCH anchors for a child restraint system, move the seat as far back as possible, with the seatback close to the child restraint system.
- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When driving 2

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 166
Engine (ignition) switch 177
Automatic transmission 181
Turn signal lever 189
Parking brake 190
Horn 191

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 192
Indicators and warning lights 196
Multi-information display 200

2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 208
Automatic High Beam 213
Fog light switch 220
Windshield wipers and washer 222
Rear window wiper and washer 228
Headlight cleaner switch 231

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 232
Dynamic radar cruise control 236
Intuitive parking assist 251
Rear view monitor system 262
Lexus parking assist monitor 270
Wide view front & side monitor 303
4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension) 320
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) 331
Four-wheel drive system 332
Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function) 337
Multi-terrain Select 344
Driving assist systems 349
Pre-Collision System 357

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions 363
Cargo and luggage 368
Vehicle load limits 375
Winter driving tips 376
Trailer towing 381
Dinghy towing 401

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

Starting the engine (→P. 177)

Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to "D". (→P. 181)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 190)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to "P" or "N". (→P. 181)

Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 190)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to "P". (→P. 181)

When parking on a hill, if necessary, block the wheels.

STEP 4 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "D".
STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.
STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while power mode is selected (→P. 183)

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 200 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 500 miles (800 km):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 miles (1600 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 888)

Eco Driving Indicator



1 Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.

2 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

3 Zone of Eco driving

4 Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If the vehicle exceeds Zone of Eco driving, the right side of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will blink and Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

Eco Driving Indicator Light will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in anything other than "D".
- The paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operating.
- The vehicle is set to second start mode or power mode. (→P. 183)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 81 mph (130 km/h) or higher.
- The Crawl Control is operating. (→P. 337)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When turning off the engine**

Emission system operating sounds may continue for a short time after the engine is turned off. This is not a malfunction, and helps to ensure optimal performance of the emission system.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ **When driving the vehicle**

● Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.

- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. This may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R".
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed.
  Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "P" while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "R" while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "D" while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to "N" while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when "N" is selected.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 883
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 182)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.
- When crossing rivers, turn off height control after putting the vehicle height in high mode, and drive at 18 mph (30 km/h) or less. Otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.
  (→P. 320)

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.
The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or that of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than "P" or "N", the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Failure to do so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

  Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in "P". You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode. (→P. 332)
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off.
Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to abnormal engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems: If one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering pump.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 859)

■ **When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle.

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following.

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns green.

STEP 4



Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

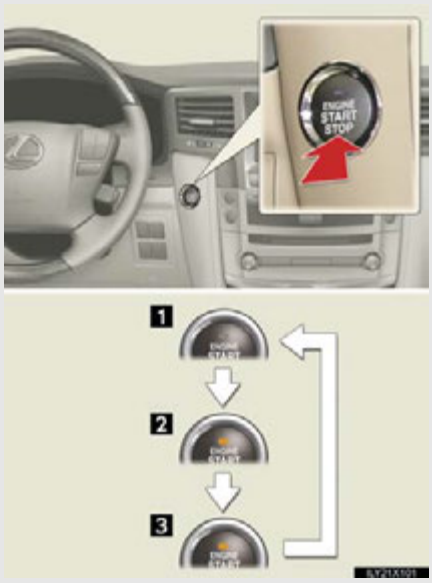
The engine can be started from any "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started. The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode

Modes can be changed by pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 OFF*

Emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than "P" when turning off the engine, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operation of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch**

When operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**



The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 119)
Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes with the shift lever in P, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 42

■ **When the electronic key battery is discharged**

→P. 872

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 40

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P. 43

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 883)
However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.

■ **When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch**

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever



While the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shift position uses

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Condition in which the power is not transmitted
D	Normal driving*1 or temporary shift range selection driving*2
S	"S" mode driving*3 (→P. 186)

*1: Shifting to the "D" position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the "D" position is recommended for normal driving.

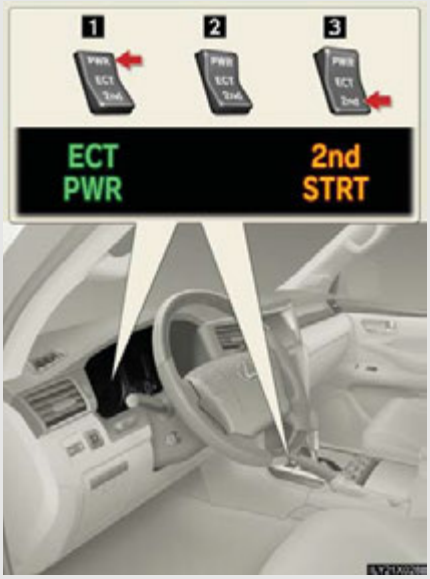
*2: If equipped, by selecting shift ranges using paddle shift switches, you can control engine braking forces.

*3: Selecting shift ranges using "S" mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting a driving mode

The following patterns can be selected to suit current driving and operating conditions.



1 Power mode

For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

2 Normal mode

For normal driving.

3 Second start mode

For starting on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press "2nd" to return to normal mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing shift range in "D" position

Shift lever

If the shift lever is shifted into the "D" position, the appropriate gear is automatically selected, as determined by the driving conditions.

Paddle shift switches (if equipped)

While the shift lever is in the "D" position, engine braking force can be temporarily switched to.

By firstly operating the "-" paddle shift switch, the "-" and "+" switches can be used to freely switch the shift range.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Downshifting

2 Upshifting

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

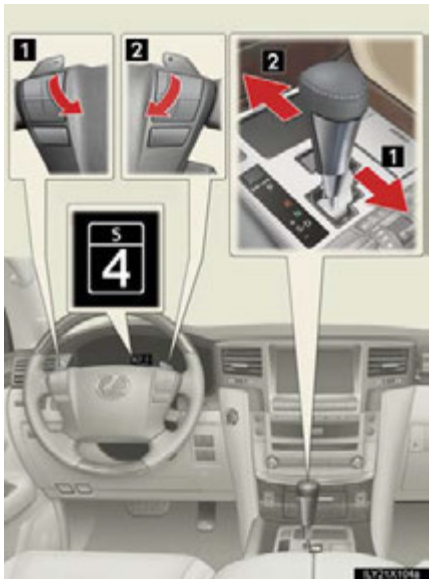
Shift ranges and their functions

- Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. But, the gear is limited according to selected shift range.
- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

When the shift lever is in the “S” position, the shift lever or paddle shift switches can be operated as follows:



1 Downshifting
2 Upshifting

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “5” or “4” according to the vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “3” or “2” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 188)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shift ranges and their functions

- Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. But, the gear is limited according to selected shift range.
- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.

Paddle shift switches (if equipped)

- When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the "D" position, a shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal "D" position driving.
- Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the "D" position
  Shift range selection in the "D" position will be deactivated in the following situations:
  - When the vehicle comes to a stop
  - If the accelerator pedal is depressed for longer than a certain period of time in one shift range

"S" mode

- When the shift range is "5" or lower, holding the shift lever or paddle shift switch toward "+" sets the shift range to "6".
- To prevent excessive engine speed, a function was adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range before the engine speed becomes too high.
- To protect the automatic transmission, a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high.

Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or a paddle shift switch (if equipped) is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When driving with the cruise control or radar cruise control activated**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control or radar cruise control will not be canceled.

- While driving in "D" position (vehicles with paddle shift switches) or "S" mode, downshifting to "5" or "4". (→P. 232, 236)
- When switching the driving mode to power mode while driving in "D" position. (→P. 183)

■ **Second start mode automatic deactivation**

Second start mode is automatically deactivated if the engine is turned off after driving in second start mode.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"**

→P. 870

■ **If the "S" indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to "S"**

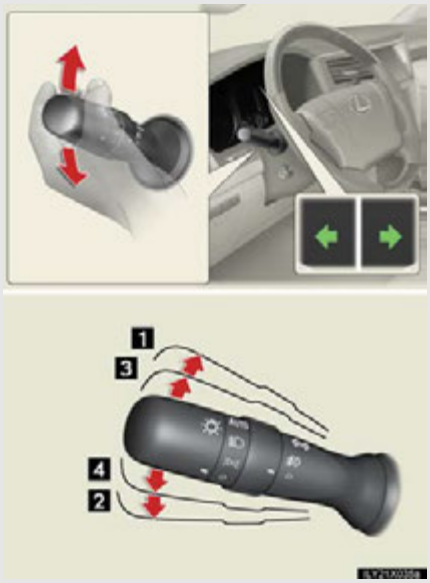
This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in "D".)

■ **AI-SHIFT**

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the suitable position according to the driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the "D" position. (Shifting the shift lever to the "S" position cancels the function.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn signal lever



1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and then release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and then release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

■ **To discontinue flashing of the turn signals during a lane change**

Operate the lever in the opposite direction.

■ **Customization**

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking brake



1 Sets the parking brake

Fully set the parking brake while depressing the brake pedal.

2 Releases the parking brake

Slightly raise the lever and lower it completely while pressing the button.

■ Usage in winter time

→P. 376

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

1 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

2 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

3 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

4 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

5 Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data. (→P. 200)

6 Voltmeter

Displays the charge state

7 Engine oil pressure gauge

Displays the engine oil pressure

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

8 Odometer and trip meter

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently

9 Odometer/trip meter display change button

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays

10 Instrument panel light control dial

The brightness of the instrument panel light can be adjusted

Switching the display

Pressing this button switches between odometer and trip meter.



1 Odometer
2 Trip meter A*
3 Trip meter B*

*: Pushing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Eco Driving Indicator Light customization

Eco Driving Indicator Light can be activated or deactivated.



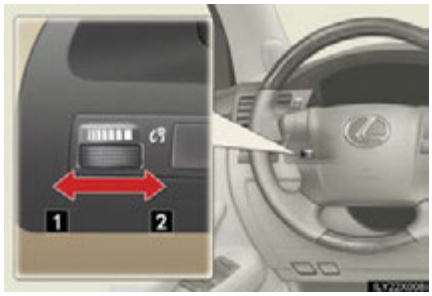
STEP 1 While the odometer is being displayed, press and hold the odometer/trip meter display change button to display the Eco Driving Indicator Light customization screen.

STEP 2 Press the odometer/trip meter display change button to set Eco Driving Indicator Light to on or off.

STEP 3 Press and hold the odometer/trip meter display change button to complete the setting.

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel light can be adjusted.



1 Darker
2 Brighter

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **The brightness of the instrument panel lights**

When the tail lights are turned on, the meter's brightness will be reduced slightly unless the meter brightness level adjustment is set to the brightest setting.
If the tail lights are turned on when the surroundings are dark, the meter's brightness will be reduced slightly. However, when the surroundings are bright, such as during the daytime, the meter's brightness will not be reduced even if the tail lights are turned on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 878)

■ **Voltmeter**

When the voltmeter indicates 19 V or higher or 9 V or lower while the engine is running, there may be a battery or charging system malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Engine oil pressure gauge**

When the value of the engine oil pressure gauge drops while the engine is running, stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the amount of engine oil. (→P. 753)
When the oil pressure drops even though the engine oil amount has not decreased, or if the oil pressure does not increase when engine oil is added, contact your Lexus dealer, as there may be a problem with the lubrication system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Indicators and warning lights

The indicators and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all indicators and warning lights illuminated.

▶ Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

▶ Center panel



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 189)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 210)


(U.S.A.)
Headlight indicator (→P. 208)


(Canada)
Tail light indicator (→P. 209)


Fog light indicator (→P. 220)

*1


"AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 210)


Cruise control indicator (→P. 232, 236)


(if equipped)
Intuitive parking assist indicator (→P. 251)

*1

Crawl Control indicator (→P. 337)

*1


Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off indicator (→P. 139)



"PWR" mode indicator (→P. 183)



Automatic transmission second start indicator (→P. 183)



Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light (→P. 332)


Center differential lock indicator (→P. 332)


Security indicator (→P. 119, 121)

*1

Easy access mode indicator (→P. 323)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

*1, 2  Slip indicator (→P. 350)

*1 

VSC OFF indicator (→P. 351)



"SET" indicator (→P. 232, 236)



(if equipped)
Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 213)

*1 

Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 168)

*1 

"AIR BAG ON/OFF" indicator (→P. 140)


(if equipped)
Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (→P. 236)


Multi-terrain Select indicator (→P. 344)


Turn Assist function indicator (→P. 339)

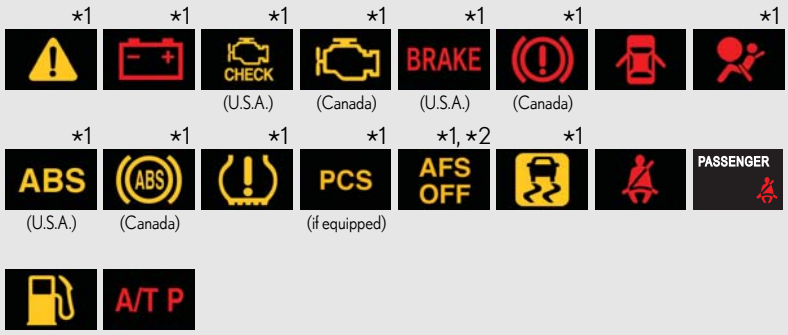
*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 826)



*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

CAUTION

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as Multi Terrain ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data including the current outside air temperature.



- Trip information (→P. 202)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information.
- Outside temperature display (→P. 202)
- Speedometer (→P. 203)
- Turn-by-turn navigation (→P. 206)
- Front tire angle (→P. 204)
- Tire inflation pressure (→P. 205)
- Intuitive parking assist display (if equipped) (→P. 251)

  Automatically displayed when using Intuitive parking assist.
- 4-Wheel AHC display (→P. 320)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 236)

Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.

● Multi-terrain Select display (→P. 344)

● Crawl Control display (→P. 337)

● Shift position and shift range (→P. 181)

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range.

● Warning messages (→P. 837)

Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's system.

Switching the display



Display items can be switched by pressing the "DISP" switch.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Display items

Outside temperature display



Displays the outside temperature

- The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40°F (-40°C) to 122°F (50°C).
- When Crawl Control and Multi-terrain Select is operating, the temperature is displayed on the top of the multi-information display. Otherwise, it is displayed in the middle of the multi-information display.

Average fuel consumption and Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display (→P. 168)



Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pressing the "DISP" switch for longer than 1 second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Average fuel consumption after refueling



Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Current fuel consumption



Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

Driving range



Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated. When refueling, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, the display may not be updated.

Speedometer

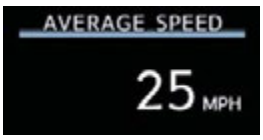


Displays the vehicle speed.

The speed units (MPH or km/h) can be selected by pressing the "DISP" switch for longer than 1 second when the speedometer is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "DISP" switch for longer than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

Front tire angle



Displays the direction of the front tires

The tire direction is displayed in 3 stages for both left and right, in accordance with the angle of the tire.

Turn-by-turn navigation setting screen



The turn-by-turn navigation can be set to on or off.

The function can be activated or deactivated by pressing the "DISP" switch for longer than 1 second when turn-by-turn navigation setting screen is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire inflation pressure



Displays inflation pressure of each tire. There is no correlation between the order of the displayed values and the tire positions.

If the inflation pressure of any tire drops a certain amount below the tire inflation pressure value currently memorized in the system, the displayed values will be highlighted.
It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
If the tire pressure warning light is on or flashing, a message describing the situation will be displayed.

Display off

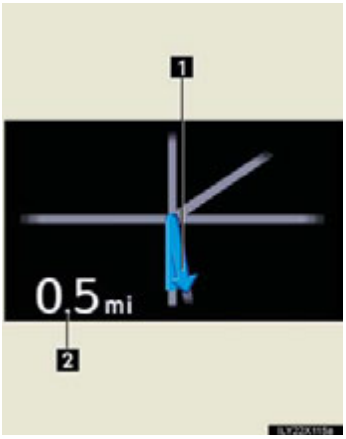
A blank screen is displayed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ System check display

After turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, "LEXUS" is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

■ Turn-by-turn navigation



The turn-by-turn navigation appears only while route guidance of the navigation system is being performed. When a turn approaches, the distance to the turn and the turn direction are displayed.

1 Turn direction

2 Distance to the next turn

The image shown may differ from the actual intersection.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Outside temperature display**

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ **When "--" or "E" is displayed**

The outside temperature display may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The following information data will be reset:

- Average fuel consumption after refueling
- Average fuel consumption
- Average vehicle speed

⚠ CAUTION

■ **The information display at low temperatures**

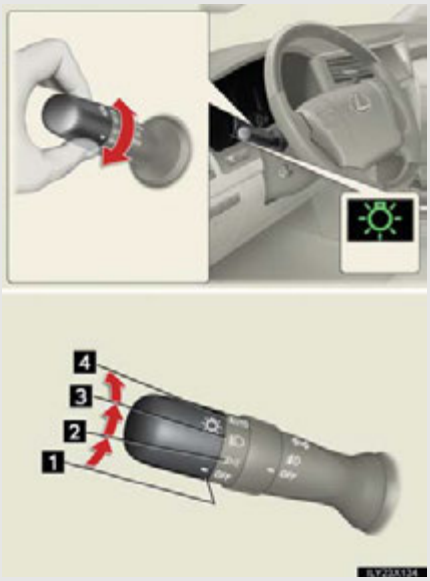
Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

▶ Type A



1 OFF The daytime running lights turn on.

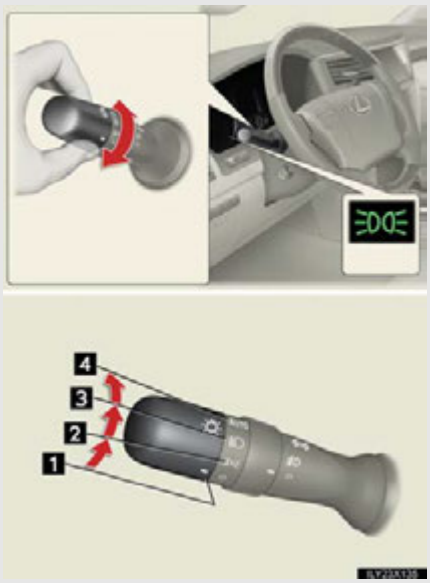
2 The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

3 The headlights and all lights listed above (except daytime running lights) turn on.

4 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type B



1 ○ The daytime running lights turn on.

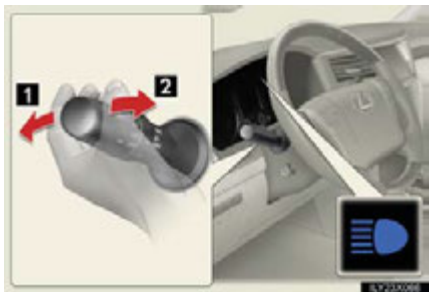
2 The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

3 The headlights and all lights listed above (except daytime running lights) turn on.

4 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Vehicles with an Automatic High Beam system: When the light switch is in "AUTO" position, the Automatic High Beam system will be activated. (→P. 213)

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release the lever to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher

Deactivating AFS



On/off

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Daytime running light system

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the parking lights turn on automatically (at an increased intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.
- Compared to turning on the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help improve fuel economy.

Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

Automatic light off system

- When the headlights are on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been switched to ACCESSORY or OFF mode.
- When only the tail lights are on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY or OFF mode and driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to the or position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **If the "AFS OFF" indicator flashes**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system



Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the "AUTO" position when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

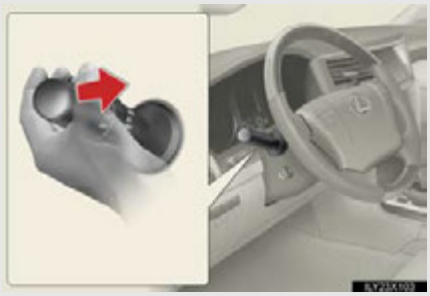
The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning the high beam on/off manually

▶ Switching to low beam



Pull the lever to the original position.

▶ Switching to high beam



Turn the light switch to the position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 21 mph (34 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 17 mph (27 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Limitations of the Automatic High Beam**

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve.
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another.
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- Houselights, streetlights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - Road conditions (wetness, ice, snow etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of baggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beam on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.

- In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
- The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
- The windshield is cracked or damaged.
- The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
- The camera sensor temperature is extremely high.
- Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or are not aimed properly.
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
- The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
- The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
- The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
- The Automatic High Beam indicator is flashing.
- The high beam and low beam are repeatedly being switched between in an abnormal manner.
- The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If a warning message of the Automatic High Beam is displayed...**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Temporary lowering sensor sensitivity**

The sensitivity of the sensor can be temporarily lowered.

To lower the sensitivity, push and hold  on the inside rear view mirror for 15 to 20 seconds, and release. The indicator light on the inside rear view mirror will flash to indicate that the sensitivity has been lowered.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the sensitivity will be returned to its normal level.

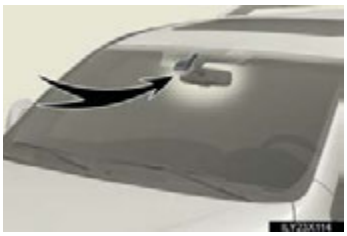
■ **Customization**

The Automatic High Beam can be turned off.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Camera sensor



Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

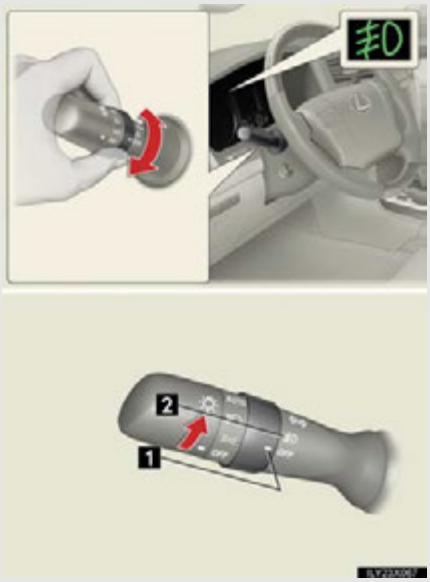
- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the inside rear view mirror and the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with a non-genuine windshield.
  Contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fog light switch

The fog lights assist visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. The fog lights can be used when the headlights are on low beam.

▶ Type A

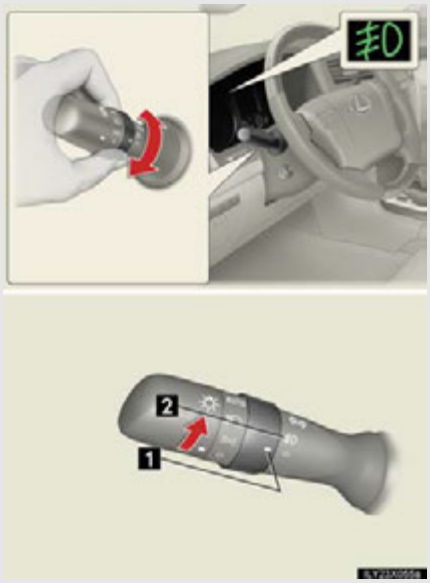


1 OFF Turns the fog lights off

2 Turns the fog lights on

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type B



1 O Turns the fog lights off

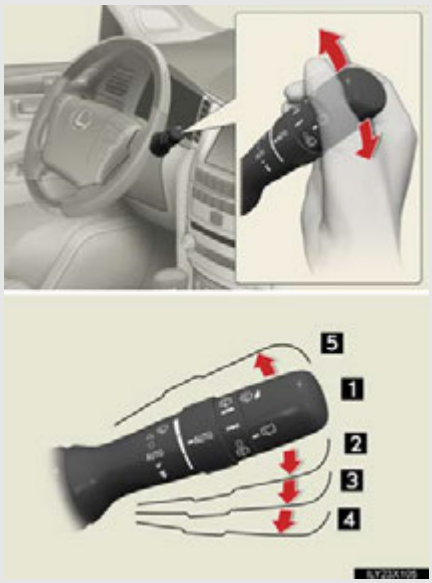
2 Turns the fog lights on

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield wipers and washer

When "AUTO" is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing according to rain volume and vehicle speed.

▶ Type A



1 O Off

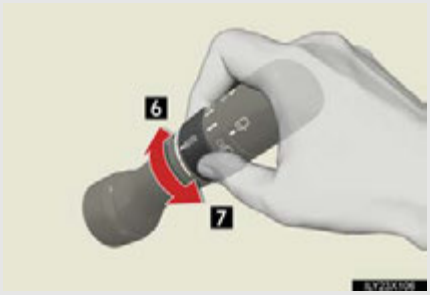
2 AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation

3 ▼ Low speed wiper operation

4 ▼▼ High speed wiper operation

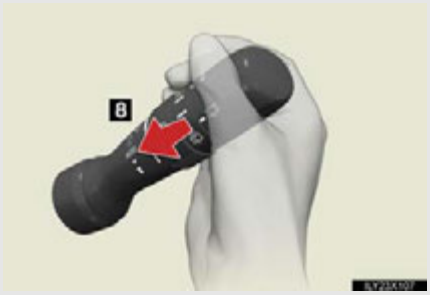
5 △ Temporary operation

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

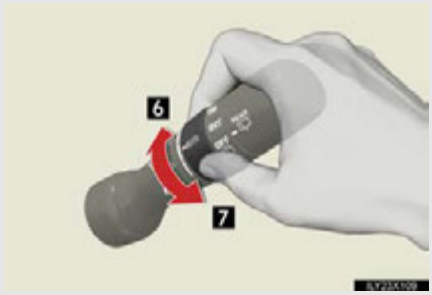
The wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type B







1 OFF Off

2 AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation

3 LO Low speed wiper operation

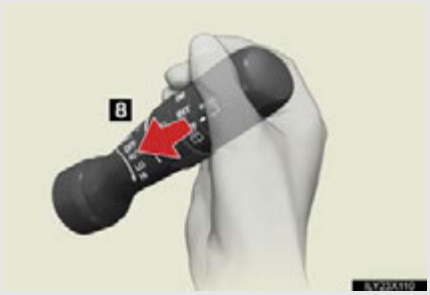
4 HI High speed wiper operation

5 MIST Temporary operation

6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



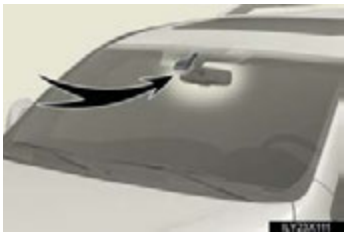
8 Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

■ **The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **"AUTO" mode**



- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.

- If the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that "AUTO" mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the rain drop sensor is 176 °F (80 °C) or higher, or 14 °F (-10 °C) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

With the settings other than "AUTO" also, the time until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs is changed depending on vehicle speed.

▶ Type A

With ▼ selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

▶ Type B

With LO selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers etc. anything else does not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

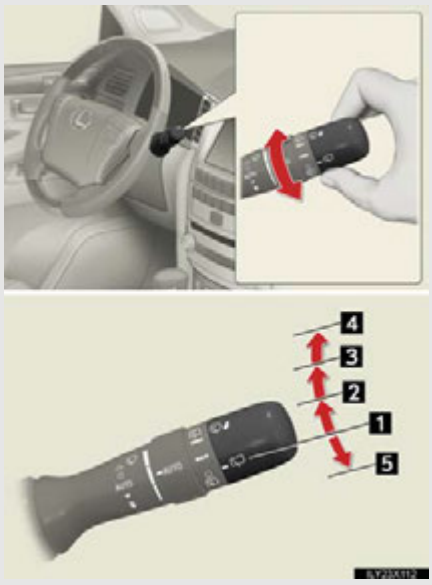
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear window wiper and washer

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows:

▶ Type A



1 O Off

2 - - - Intermittent window wiper operation

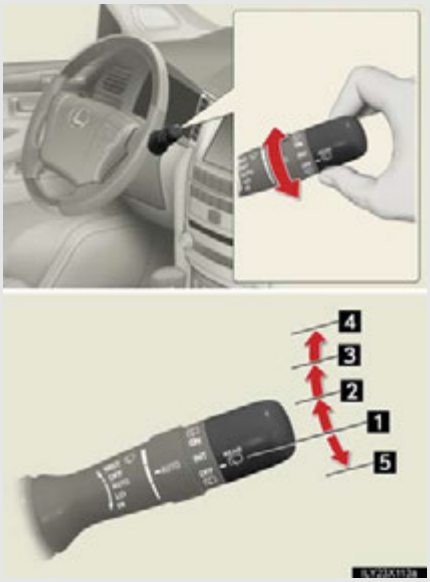
3 — Normal window wiper operation

4 Washer/wiper dual operation

5 Washer/wiper dual operation

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type B



1 OFF Off

2 INT Intermittent window wiper operation

3 ON Normal window wiper operation

4 Washer/wiper dual operation

5 Washer/wiper dual operation

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep**

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

■ **Effect of vehicle and shift position on wiper operation**

▶ Type A

- With ▬ selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only the vehicle is stationary.
- With ▬▬ or ○ selected, the rear window wiper sweeps once when you shift the shift lever to "R" while windshield wipers operating or with 17 seconds from their deactivation.

▶ Type B

- With **ON** selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only the vehicle is stationary.
- With **INT** or **OFF** selected, the rear window wiper sweeps once when you shift the shift lever to "R" while windshield wipers operating or with 17 seconds from their deactivation.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. drip prevention function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlight cleaner switch*

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

■ The headlight cleaner can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

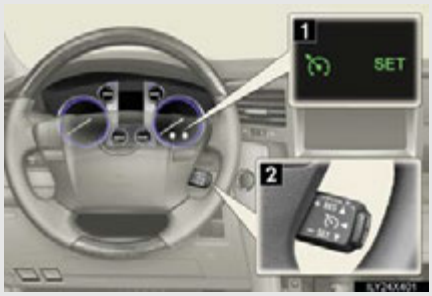
Do not use this function when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause the washer fluid pump to overheat.

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cruise control*

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.



1 Indicators
2 Cruise control switch

Setting the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the "D" or range "4" or higher of "S" has been selected.
- Range "4" or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- VSC is activated.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The switching operation continues for 5 seconds or more after the center differential lock switch has been operated.

■ **If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



1 Display
2 Set speed
3 Indicators
4 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
5 Cruise control switch

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

STEP 1

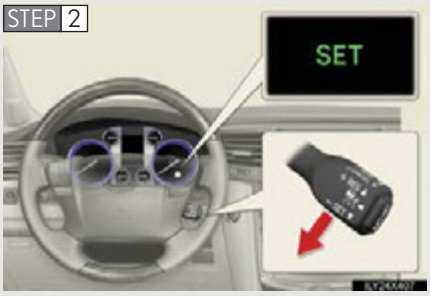


Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

STEP 2



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

- When the set speed is shown in "MPH"
  Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) each time the lever is operated
  Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held
- When the set speed is shown in "km/h"
  Fine adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) each time the lever is operated
  Large adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

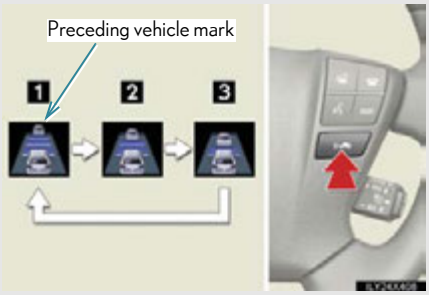
In the constant speed control mode (→P. 243), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 220 ft. (65 m)
Medium	Approximately 130 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

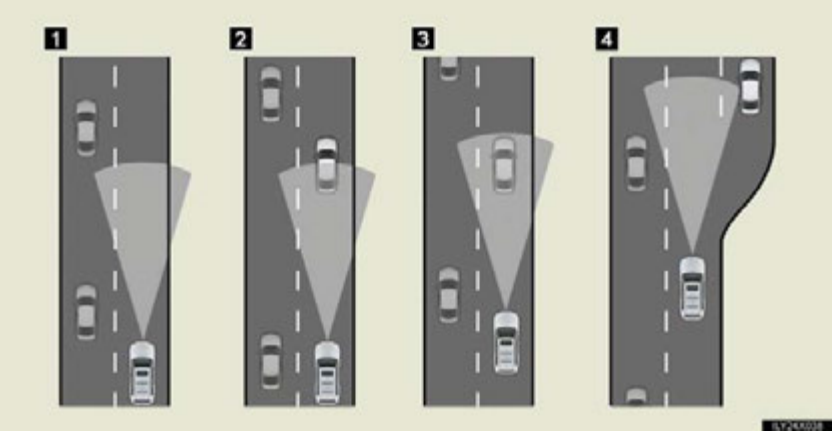
Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



1 Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2 Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Example of follow-up cruising
When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.



1 Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode. (Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Cruise control indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 238

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 240

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in "D" or range "4" or higher of "S" has been selected.
- Range "4" or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the "AUTO" mode or high speed wiper operation position).
- When second start mode is set.
- The switching operation continues for 5 seconds or more after the center differential lock switch has been operated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

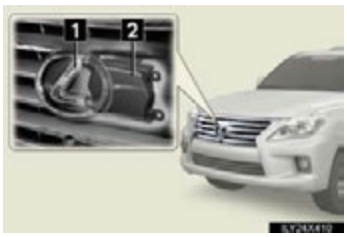
Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The switching operation continues for 5 seconds or more after the center differential lock switch has been operated.

Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



1 Grille cover
2 Radar sensor

Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 837)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID : HYQDNMWR005

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 242) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Intuitive parking assist*

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display, touch screen and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Types of sensors



1 Front corner sensors
2 Rear corner sensors
3 Rear center sensors

Intuitive parking assist switch



Turns the Intuitive parking assist on/off.

When on, the indicator light comes on and the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.
To turn the system off, press the switch again.

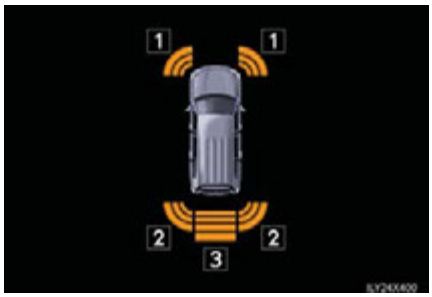
*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Display

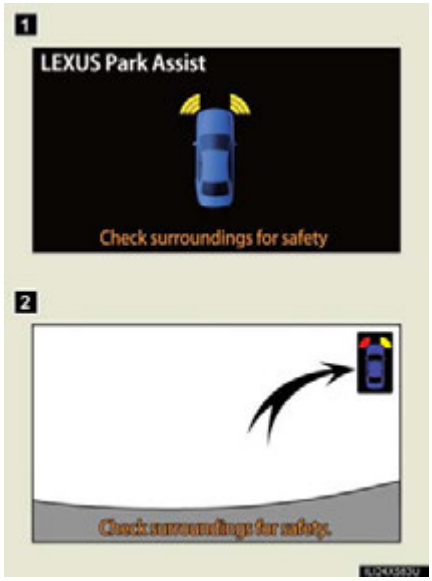
When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display and touch screen depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

Multi-information display



1 Front corner sensor detection
2 Rear corner sensor detection
3 Rear center sensor detection

Touch screen



1 When the rear view monitor, Lexus parking assist monitor or the wide view front & side monitor is not displayed

A graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 257)

2 When the rear view monitor, Lexus parking assist monitor or the wide view front & side monitor is displayed (insert display)

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner of the touch screen when an obstacle is detected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

Corner sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen	Touch screen: Insert display
Front: 1.6 ft. (50 cm) to 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm) Rear: 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.5 ft. (45 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
Front: 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm) Rear: 1.5 ft. (45 cm) to 1.0 ft. (30 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Front: Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm) Rear: Less than 1.0 ft. (30 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear center sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen (insert display)
4.9 ft. (150 cm) to 2.6 ft. (80 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)
2.6 ft. (80 cm) to 2.1 ft. (65 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
2.1 ft. (65 cm) to 1.6 ft. (50 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Less than 1.6 ft. (50 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

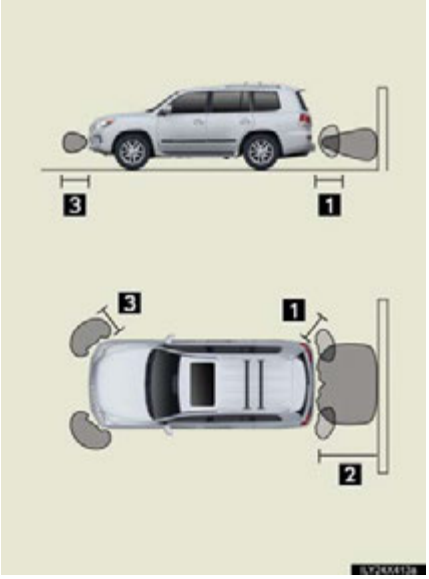
Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the corner sensors and rear center sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously:
  - Front corner sensors: Approximately 0.8 ft. (25 cm)
  - Rear corner sensors: Approximately 1.0 ft. (30 cm)
  - Rear center sensors: Approximately 1.6 ft. (50 cm)
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.
- You can change the volume of the warning beeps. (→P. 257)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Detection range of the sensors



1 Approximately 2.0 ft. (60 cm)
2 Approximately 4.9 ft. (150 cm)
3 Approximately 1.6 ft. (50 cm)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting up intuitive parking assist

You can change the warning beep volume and touch screen operating conditions.

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button.

STEP 2 Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Lexus Park Assist" on the "Vehicle Settings" screen.



1 Alert volume setting
2 Display on/off
3 Alert distance setting

Make sure to save after changing settings.

Alert volume setting

The alert volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Touch "1" to "5" on the "LEXUS Park Assist settings" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Save".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Display on/off setting

On or off can be selected for intuitive parking assist display.

STEP 1 Touch "Display Off".

When the "Display Off" indicator is turned on, the display of intuitive parking assist will be off. Touch "Display Off" again to turn the display of intuitive parking assist on.

STEP 2 Touch "Save".

Alert distance setting

Front or rear center sensors display and tone indication can be set.

STEP 1 Touch "Rear".

Long distance or short distance can be selected.

STEP 2 Touch "Save".

The intuitive parking assist can be operated when

- Front corner sensors:
  - The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than "P".
  - The vehicle speed is less than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Rear corner and rear center sensors:
  - The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in "R".

Intuitive parking assist display

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor system, Lexus parking assist monitor or wide view front & side monitor is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even if the display setting has been set to off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Sensor detection information

● The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front corner and rear bumpers.

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
  In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
- The sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- The sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing hook is installed.
- The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
- If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.
- People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low obstacles
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

● The following situations may occur during use.

- Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
- Obstacles may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor
- There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
- Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected for collision when approached, even if they have been detected once.
- It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of air conditioning system.

■ **If a message is displayed on the multi-information display**

→P. 837

■ **Certification (Canada only)**

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When using the intuitive parking assist

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When using intuitive parking assist

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- A beep does not sound when you turn the main switch on.
- The intuitive parking assist operation display flashes, and a beep sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without a beep.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even if there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear view monitor system*

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.



The rear view monitor system will activate when the shift lever is in "R".

If you move the lever out of "R", the rear view monitor system will be deactivated.

When the shift lever is shifted to the "R" position and any mode button (such as "MAP/VOICE") is pressed, the rear view monitor system is cancelled, and the screen is switched to the mode of the button that was pressed.

*: If equipped

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the rear view monitor system

Screen display

The rear view monitor system screen will be displayed if the shift lever is shifted to the "R" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The rear view monitor system displays the last-used parking mode first.



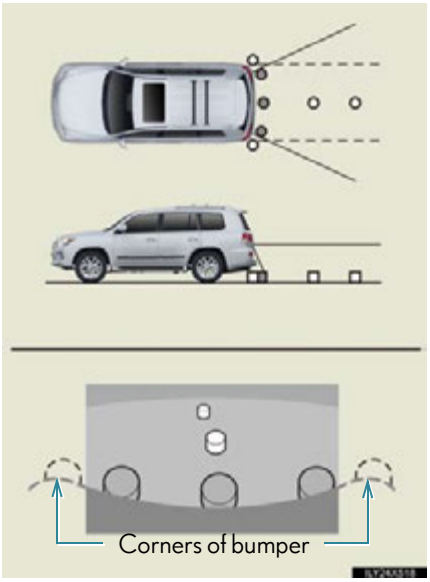
1 Intuitive parking assist display

If an obstacle is detected while the Intuitive parking assist is on, a display is shown in the top right corner of the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear view monitor system precautions

Area displayed on screen



The rear view monitor system displays an image of the view from the bumper of the rear area of the vehicle.

To adjust the image on the rear view monitor system screen.
(→P. 406)

- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation conditions.
- Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- Items which are located higher than the camera may not be displayed by the monitor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear view monitor system camera



The camera for the rear view monitor system is located above the license plate.

● Using the camera

If dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera, it cannot transmit a clear image. In this case, flush it with a large quantity of water. After that, rinse the camera lens with water and wipe it clean with a soft and wet cloth.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Things you should know

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the likely cause and the solution, and re-check.

If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see	• The vehicle is in a dark area • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud etc.) is adhering to the camera • There are scratches on the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.) To adjust the image on the rear view monitor system screen. (→P. 406)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is blurry	Dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera.	Flush the camera with a large quantity of water. After that, rinse the camera lens with water and wipe it clean with a soft and wet cloth.
A vertical white streak is on the screen	When a bright spot (such as sunlight reflecting off the body of another vehicle) is received by the camera, a vertical streak may be left above and below the bright spot (smear effect). 	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.)
The image is out of alignment	The camera or surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When using the rear view monitor system

The rear view monitor system is a supplemental device intended to assist the driver when backing up. When backing up, be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend on the rear view monitor system entirely when backing up. The image and the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state.
  Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- When parking, be sure to check that the parking space will accommodate your vehicle before maneuvering into it.
- Be sure to back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the image may become faint. The image could distort when the vehicle is moving, or you may become unable to see the image on the screen. Be sure to check direct visually and with the mirrors all around the vehicle before proceeding.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distances between objects and pedestrians that appear in the image displayed on the screen will differ from the actual distances. (→P. 292)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ How to use the camera

● The rear view monitor system may not operate properly in the following cases.

- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

● Do not expose the camera to strong impact as this could cause a malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus parking assist monitor*

The parking assist monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The parking assist monitor system assists with the following 2 backing-up operations:

- Perpendicular parking (parking in a garage, etc.)
- Parallel parking (parking at the side of the road, etc.)

The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.



The parking assist monitor system will activate when the shift lever is in "R".

If you move the lever out of "R", the parking assist monitor system will be deactivated.

When the shift lever is shifted to the "R" position and any mode button (such as "MAP/VOICE") is pressed, the parking assist monitor system is cancelled, and the screen is switched to the mode of the button that was pressed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

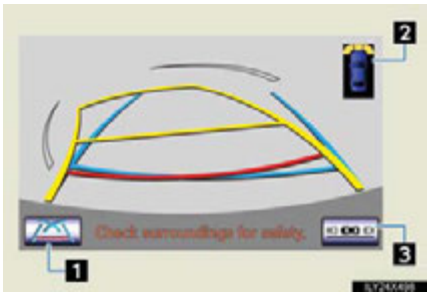
Using the Lexus parking assist monitor

Screen display

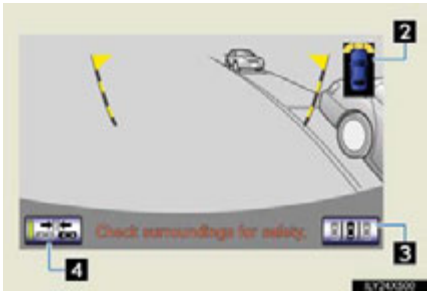
The parking assist monitor screen will be displayed if the shift lever is shifted to the "R" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The parking assist monitor displays the last-used parking mode first.

▶ Perpendicular parking



▶ Parallel parking



1 Display mode switch screen button (→P. 272)

Switches the display mode.

2 Intuitive parking assist display

If an obstacle is detected while the intuitive parking assist is on, a display is shown in the top right corner of the screen.

3 Parking mode switch screen button

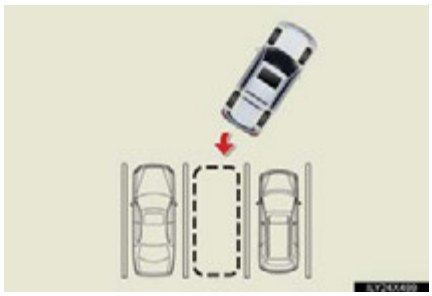
Switches the parking mode (between perpendicular parking and parallel parking assist screens)

4 Narrow mode screen on-off button

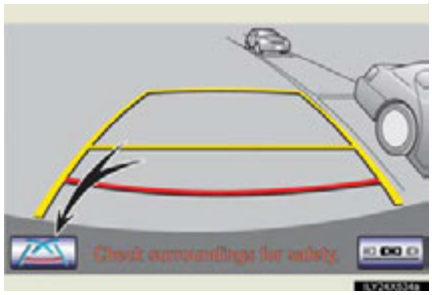
Switch the narrow mode on and off. (→P. 288)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the system when perpendicular parking



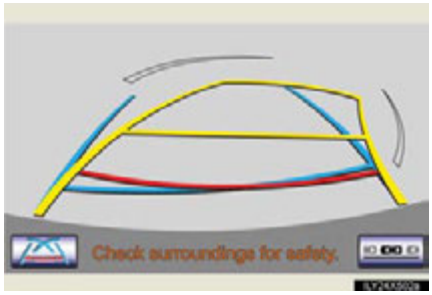
Use any of the following modes when perpendicular parking (for example, when parking in a garage).



Each time you touch the display mode switch screen button, the display mode switches in the following order:

Estimated course line display mode → Parking assist guide line display mode → Distance guide line display mode → Estimated course line display mode

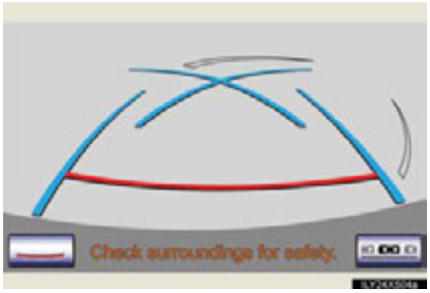
▶ Estimated course line display mode (→P. 275)



Estimated course lines are displayed which move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.

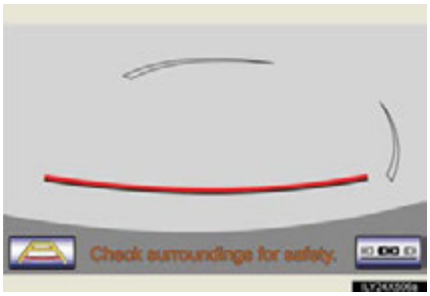
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Parking assist guide line display mode (→P. 278)



The steering wheel return points (parking assist guide lines) are displayed.

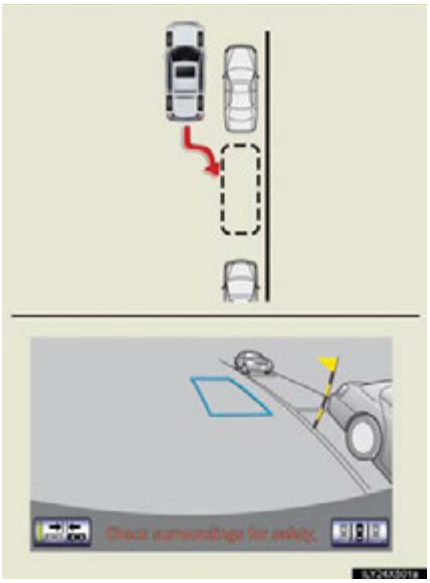
▶ Distance guide line display mode



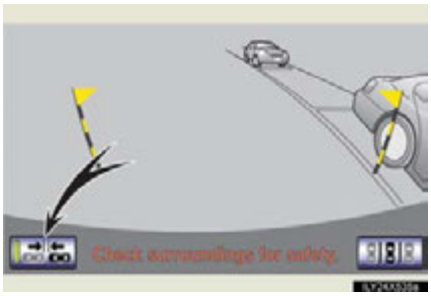
Distance guide lines only are displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the system when parallel parking

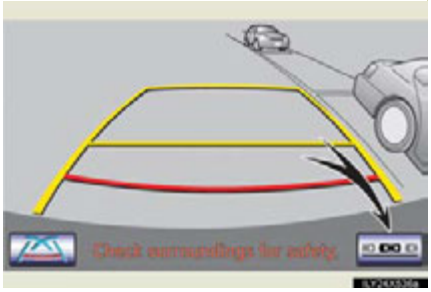


Screen display and beep sounds provide an estimation of the point at which you should turn the steering wheel when parallel parking. If the position the vehicle is to be parked in is narrower than usual, narrow mode can be used.



Each time you touch the narrow mode screen on-off button, the narrow mode and the normal mode are switched.

Switching the parking mode screen

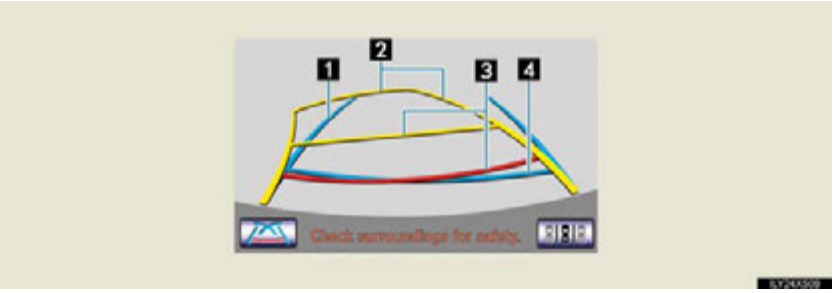


Each time you touch the parking mode switch screen button, the perpendicular parking mode and parallel parking mode are switched.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Perpendicular parking (estimated course line display mode)

Screen description



1 Vehicle width extension guide line

The line indicates a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up. The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.
The line aligns with the estimated course lines when the steering wheel is straight.

2 Estimated course lines

The lines show an estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

3 Distance guide line

The line moves, together with the estimated course lines, in sync with the steering wheel. The line shows points approximately 1.5 ft. (0.5 m) (red) and approximately 3 ft. (1 m) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

4 Distance guide line

The line shows distance behind the vehicle, a point approximately 1.5 ft. (0.5 m) (blue) from the edge of the bumper.

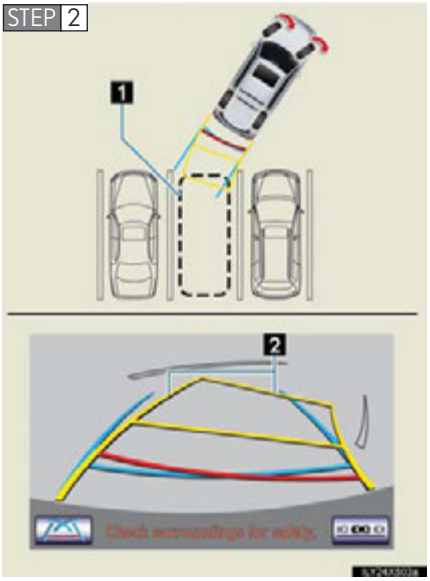
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking operation

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to the "R" position.

STEP 2



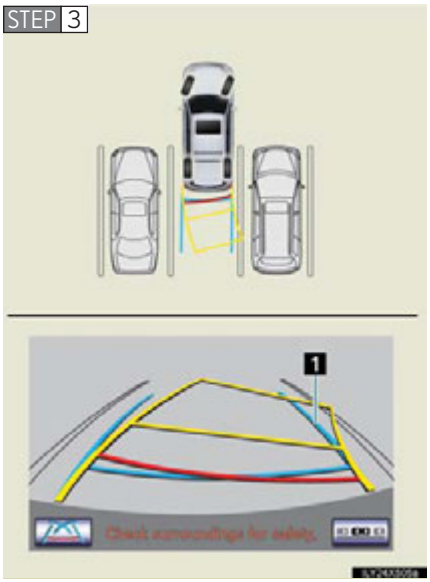
Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.

1 Parking space

2 Estimated course lines

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3



When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width extension guide lines are within the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.

1 Vehicle width extension guide line

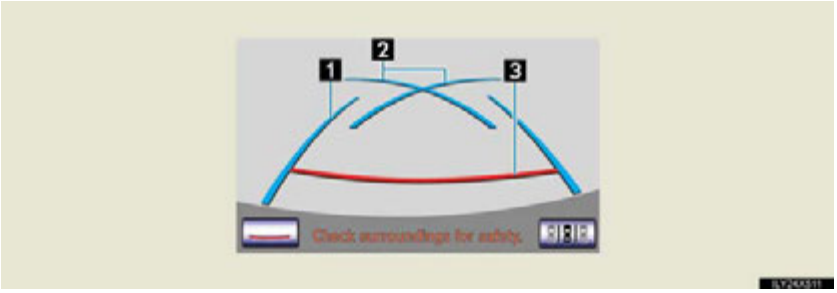
STEP 4 Once the vehicle width extension guide lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Perpendicular parking (parking assist guide line display mode)

Screen description



1 Vehicle width extension guide lines
These lines indicate a guide path when the vehicle is being backed straight up. The displayed width is wider than the actual vehicle width.

2 Parking assist guide lines
These lines indicate the path of the smallest turn possible behind the vehicle.
These lines also indicate the approximate position of the steering wheel when parking.

3 Distance guide line
This line indicates points approximately 1.5 ft. (0.5 m) (red) behind the rear bumper of your vehicle.

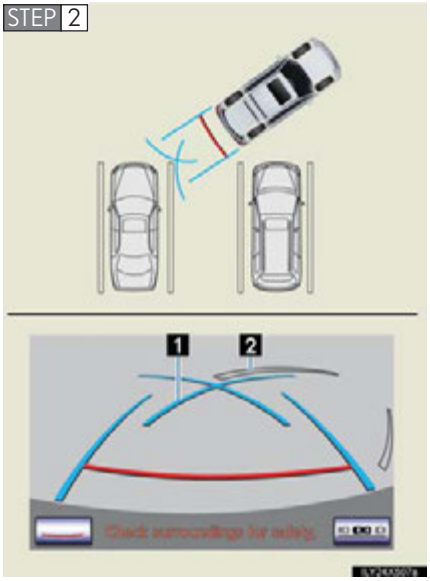
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking operation

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to the "R" position.

STEP 2



Back up until the parking assist guide line meets the edge of the left-hand dividing line of the parking space.

1 Parking assist guide line
2 Parking space dividing line

STEP 3 Turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and back up slowly.

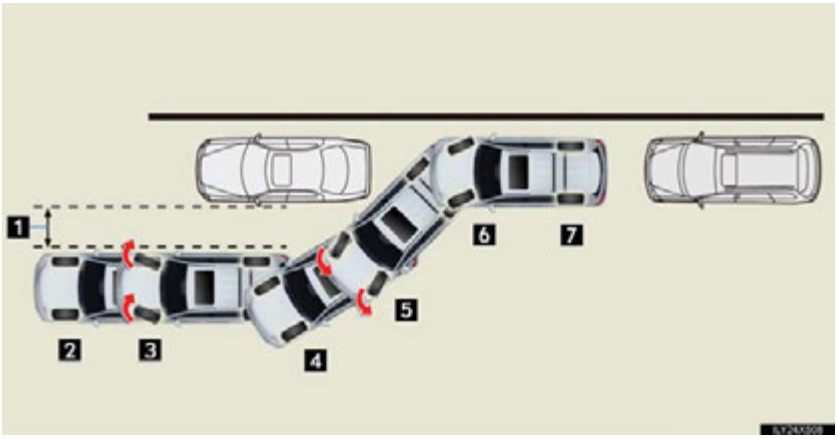
STEP 4 Once the vehicle is parallel with the parking space, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parallel parking

Vehicle movement procedure



1 Approx. 3 ft. (1 m)

2 Keeping parallel with the road, stop the vehicle leaving a gap of approximately 3 ft. (1 m) between your vehicle and the parked vehicle. (STEP 1 in "Parking operation").

3 Back up until the black and yellow vertical pole just overlaps the rear end of the parked vehicle. Then stop the vehicle. (STEP 4 in "Parking operation")

Leaving the vehicle stopped, move the steering wheel until the blue outline meets the desired parking space, and back up while keeping the steering wheel in that position. STEP 5 in "Parking operation")

4 A curved blue line is displayed. Keep the steering wheel in the same position and back up until the curved blue line meets the right corner of the parking space. (STEP 7 in "Parking operation")

5 When it meets the right corner of the parking space, turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction as far as it will go. (STEP 8 in "Parking operation")

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

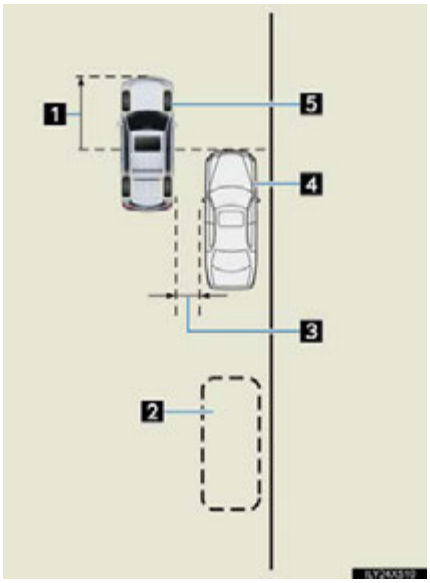
6 Keeping the steering wheel in that position, check your surroundings visually and using mirrors, and back up using the distance guide lines etc. as a reference. (STEP 9 in "Parking operation")

7 When the vehicle is approximately in the desired parking location, parallel parking assist is complete. (STEP 10 in "Parking operation")

Parking operation

The following example describes the procedure for pulling into a parking space on the right. For pulling into a parking space on the left, substitute left for right and vice versa in all steps.

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in the position as described below, and straighten the steering wheel.



1 Roughly half a vehicle's length
2 Desired parking space
3 Approx. 3 ft. (1 m)
4 Parked vehicle
5 Your vehicle

A position in which you are parallel with the road (or the side of the road), and in which there is approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of space between your vehicle and the parked vehicle

A position in which you are half a vehicle's length ahead of the parked vehicle

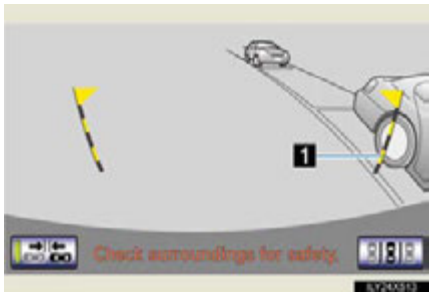
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

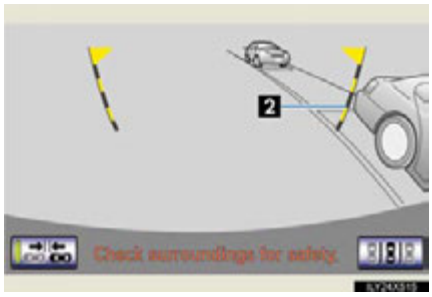
STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to the "R" position.

STEP 3 Make sure the monitor displays the part behind the rear tires of the parked vehicle, and select .

If the area is not displayed, move the vehicle to forward.

STEP 4 With the steering wheel straight, back up slowly to a position at which the black and yellow vertical pole just overlaps the rear end of the parked vehicle. Then stop the vehicle.



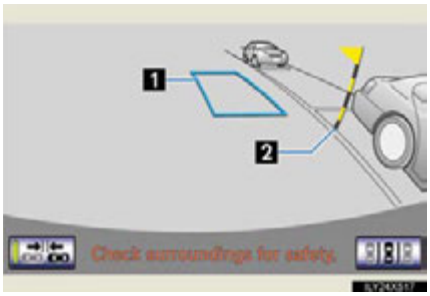


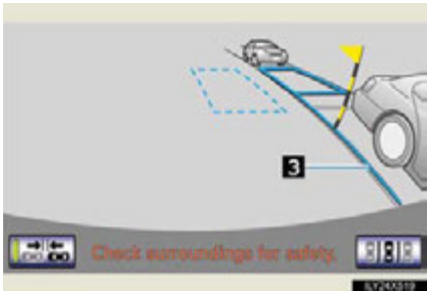
1 Black and yellow vertical pole

2 Back the vehicle up to here

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5 Turn the steering wheel with the vehicle stopped until the blue outline meets the desired parking space.

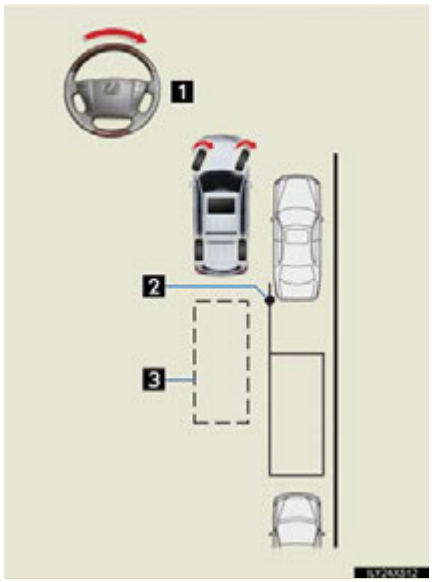




1 Blue outline
2 Black and yellow vertical pole
3 Extended line

If the extended line from the blue outline is displayed, the parallel parking assist is operational.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



1 Turn the steering wheel right
2 Black and yellow vertical pole
3 Blue outline



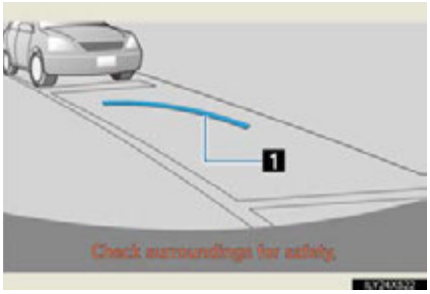
Keep the steering wheel in its current position and backing up.

The parallel parking assist will be cancelled if the steering wheel is moved while backing up. Shift the shift lever out of the "R" position, and restart from the procedure "1".

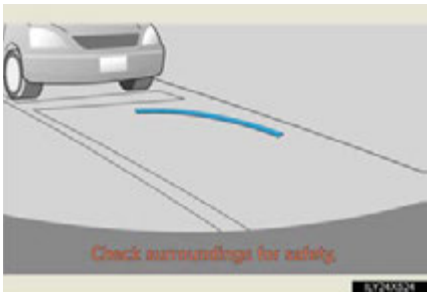
When backing up, be careful not to hit any obstacles with the right front corner of your vehicle. Back the vehicle up slowly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 7 A curved blue line will appear on the screen. Keep the steering wheel in its current position and back up slowly. Stop when the curved blue line meets the corner of the desired parking space.



1 Curved blue line



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



1 Back up keeping the steering wheel in its current position

2 Curved blue line

3 Curved blue line meets the corner here

If you back up too quickly, you may lose synchronization with the parallel parking assist.

STEP 8 Leaving the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left.

Be sure to turn the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

STEP 9 When the screen changes, keep the steering wheel in its current position and back up.

When backing up, be careful not to hit any obstacles with the right front corner of your vehicle. Back the vehicle up slowly.

STEP 10 When the vehicle is parallel with the road or the shoulder, straighten the steering wheel.

Check your surroundings visually and with the mirrors, then back up using the distance guide lines as a reference, and stop.

When the vehicle is approximately in the desired parking location, the parallel parking assist is complete.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Parallel parking assist mode information

- There is a possibility that parallel parking guidance may not be given when backing up at a very slow speed.
- If the back door is opened during parallel parking guidance, parallel parking assist will be interrupted and canceled. Stop the vehicle, shift the shift lever out of the "R" position, and restart the operation from STEP 1.

● Canceling parallel parking assist

Select .

● Vehicles equipped with intuitive parking assist

If intuitive parking assist detects an object while you attempt to park in a parking space on the left, the black and yellow vertical pole could be obscured by intuitive parking assist display. In this event, turn intuitive parking assist switch off (→P. 251), and operate the vehicle while checking the safety of the surrounding area direct visually and with mirror. After the operation, turn the switch on.

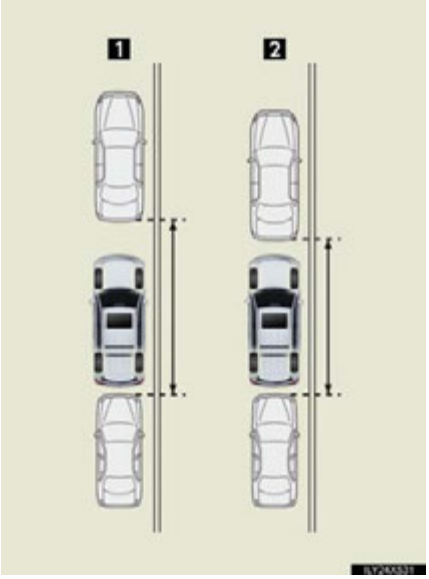
● If the message "Steering wheel turned too far, please return." is displayed

The steering wheel has been turned too far, and the system cannot function. Return the steering wheel to its original position.
If the message is displayed before the outline is positioned over the desired parking space, it is likely that the vehicle is too far away from the shoulder. Check that there is a gap of approximately 3 ft. (1 m) between your vehicle and the parked vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Narrow mode

If the position the vehicle is to be parked in is narrower than usual, narrow mode can be used.



1 Normal mode

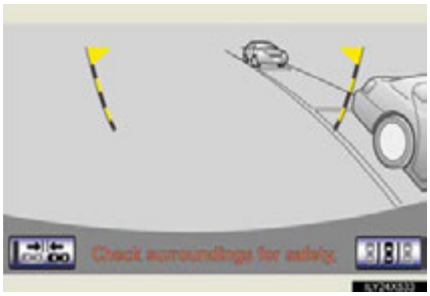
2 Narrow mode

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off when the parking assist monitor is canceled with narrow mode, the caution screen is displayed first when the parallel parking assist is selected next time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Operating narrow mode

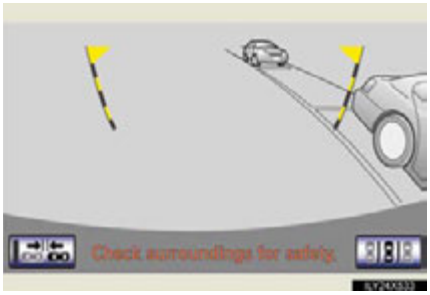
STEP 1 Touch  while in parallel parking assist mode.



STEP 2 Confirm the warning on the caution screen. If you agree, touch "I Agree". To cancel narrow mode, touch  .



STEP 3 When the system is switched to narrow mode, the indicator on  will be turned on.

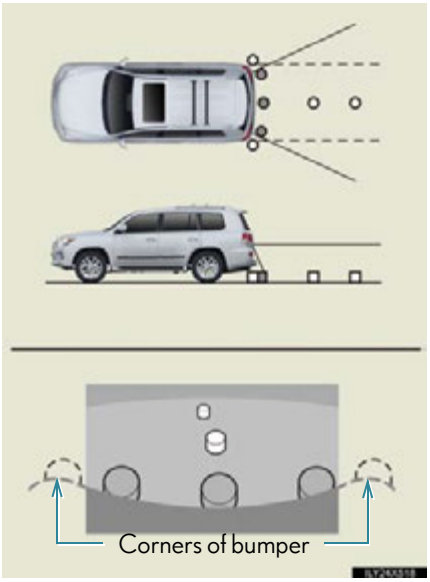


Touch  again to switch the system to the normal mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus parking assist monitor precautions

Area displayed on screen



The parking assist monitor displays an image of the view from the bumper of the rear area of the vehicle.

To adjust the image on the parking assist monitor screen. (→P. 406)

- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation conditions.
- Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- Items which are located higher than the camera may not be displayed by the monitor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus parking assist monitor camera



The camera for the parking assist monitor is located above the license plate.

● Using the camera

If dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera, it cannot transmit a clear image. In this case, flush it with a large quantity of water. After that, rinse the camera lens with water and wipe it clean with a soft and wet cloth.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

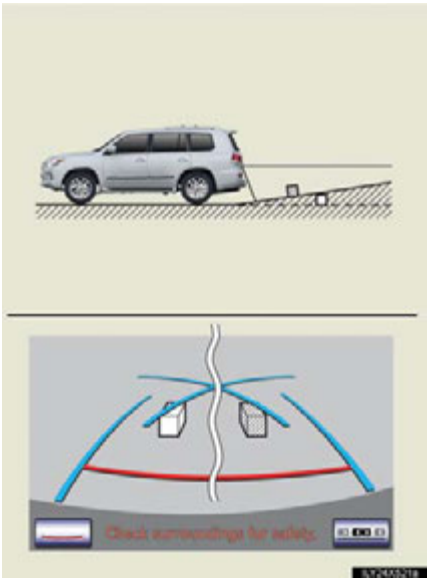
Differences between the screen and the actual road

The distance guide lines and the vehicle width extension guide lines may not actually be parallel with the dividing lines of the parking space, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distances between the vehicle width extension guide lines and the left and right dividing lines of the parking space may not be equal, even when they appear to be so. Be sure to check visually.

The distance guide lines give a distance guide for flat road surfaces. In any of the following situations, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance /course on the road.

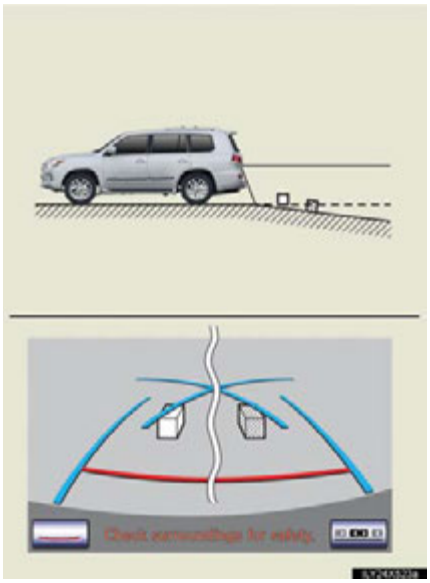
- When the ground behind the vehicle slopes up sharply



The distance guide lines will appear to be closer to the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be farther away than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance/ course on the road.

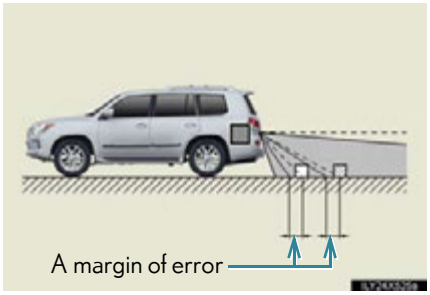
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● When the ground behind the vehicle slopes down sharply



The distance guide lines will appear to be further from the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be closer than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance/course on the road.

● When any part of the vehicle sags



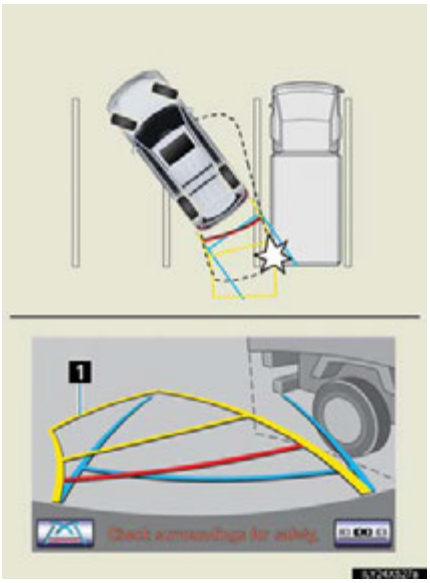
When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance/course on the road.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When approaching three-dimensional objects

The estimated course lines target a flat surfaced objects (such as the road). It is not possible to determine the position of three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) using the estimated course lines and distance guide lines. When approaching a three-dimensional object that extends outward (such as the flatbed of a truck), be careful of the following.

● Estimated course lines

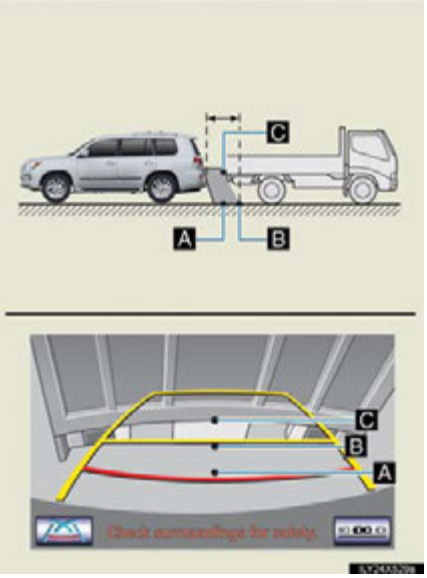


Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. In the case shown in the illustration, the truck appears to be outside of the estimated course lines and the vehicle does not look as if it hits the truck. However, the rear body of the truck may actually cross over the estimated course lines. In reality if you back up as guided by the estimated course lines, the vehicle may hit the truck.

1 Estimated course lines

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Distance guidelines



Visually check the surroundings and the area behind the vehicle. On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking at point B. However, in reality if you back up to point A, you will hit the truck. On the screen, it appears that A is closest and C is furthest away. However, in reality, the distance to A and C is the same, and B is farther than A and C.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Things you should know

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the likely cause and the solution, and re-check.

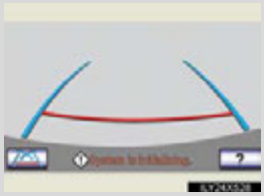
If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see	• The vehicle is in a dark area • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud etc.) is adhering to the camera • There are scratches on the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc.	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.) To adjust the image on the parking assist monitor screen. (→P. 406)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is blurry	Dirt or foreign matter (such as water droplets, snow, mud etc.) is adhering to the camera.	Flush the camera with a large quantity of water. After that, rinse the camera lens with water and wipe it clean with a soft and wet cloth.
A vertical white streak is on the screen	When a bright spot (such as sunlight reflecting off the body of another vehicle) is received by the camera, a vertical streak may be left above and below the bright spot (smear effect). 	If this happens due to these causes, it does not indicate a malfunction. Back up while visually checking the vehicle's surroundings. (Use the monitor again once conditions have been improved.)
The image is out of alignment	The camera or surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The guide lines are very far out of alignment	The camera position is out of alignment.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The estimated course lines move even though the steering wheel is straight	There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
Guide lines are not displayed	The back door is open.	Close the back door. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
"System is initializing." is displayed 	• The battery has been reinstalled. • The steering wheel has been moved while the battery was being reinstalled. • Battery power is low. • The steering sensor has been reinstalled. • There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Stop the vehicle, and turn the steering wheel as far as it will go to the left and right. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. On the system initialization screen, touch the "?" button to display the operating procedure. 

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When using the Lexus parking assist monitor system

The parking assist monitor system is a supplemental device intended to assist the driver when backing up. When backing up, be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend on the parking assist monitor entirely when backing up. The image and the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state.
  Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- Be sure to back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
- If you seem likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles, people or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, then disable the assist system by touch  on the screen to cancel the system.
- The instructions given are only guidelines.
  When and how much to turn the steering wheel will vary according to traffic conditions, road surface conditions, vehicle condition, etc. when parking. It is necessary to be fully aware of this before using the parking assist system.
- When parking, be sure to check that the parking space will accommodate your vehicle before maneuvering into it.
- Do not use the Lexus parking assist monitor system in the following cases:
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow
  - When using tire chains
  - When the back door is not closed completely
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the image may become faint. The image could distort when the vehicle is moving, or you may become unable to see the image on the screen. Be sure to check direct visually and with the mirrors all around the vehicle before proceeding.
- If the tire sizes are changed, the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change.
- The camera uses a special lens. The distances between objects and pedestrians that appear in the image displayed on the screen will differ from the actual distances. (→P. 292)

When using the perpendicular parking assist screen

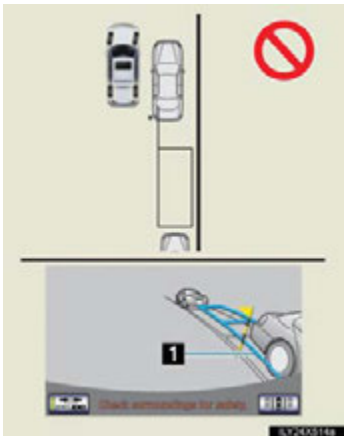
Estimated course line display mode: If the steering wheel is straight and the vehicle width extension guide lines and the estimated course lines are not in alignment, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ When using the parallel parking assist screen

- Do not use the system if the display is incorrect due to an uneven (curvy/hilly) road or a non-straight road.
- Make sure to operate the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be sure to check that there are no obstacles inside the blue outline.
  If there are any obstacles inside the blue outline, do not use the parallel parking assist.
- When positioning the blue outline over the parking space, be sure to position it so that the extended blue line may not cross the tire of the vehicle parked in front of the empty space.
- If the extended line of the blue outline may be crossing the parked vehicle, your vehicle is too close. Check that there is a gap of approximately 3 ft. (1 m) between your vehicle and the parked vehicle.



1 Extended line overlapping wheel

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

How to use the camera

- The parking assist monitor may not operate properly in the following cases.
  - If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change.
  - As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
  - When cleaning the camera lens, flush the camera with a large quantity of water, rinse the camera lens with water and wipe it with a soft and wet cloth. Failure to do so may cause the camera lens to be scratched and unable to transmit a clear image.
  - Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
  - If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
  - When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
- Do not expose the camera to strong impact as this could cause a malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Wide view front & side monitor*

This system can display the wide view front monitor and the side monitor separately or at the same time.
The wide view front monitor uses a super-wide angle lens to display on screen the areas to the left and right of the vehicle and the blind spots to the front of the vehicle. This system helps the driver check for approaching cars, bicycles and pedestrians when at intersections with poor visibility.
The side monitor uses a camera installed in the passenger's side outside rear view mirror to display on screen the area to the front-right of the vehicle, helping the driver check this area.



On/off

The simultaneous display screen is displayed when the VIEW switch is pressed.

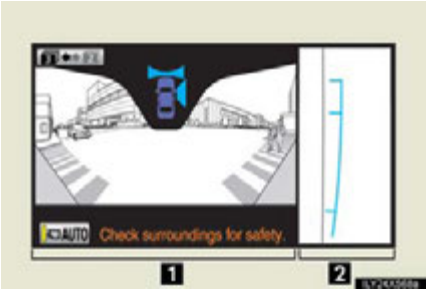
*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Display

Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display

Both the wide view front monitor and the side monitor are displayed on one screen. When switching to the wide view front & side monitors this screen is displayed first, regardless of the screen mode.



1 Wide view front monitor
2 Side monitor

Wide view front monitor

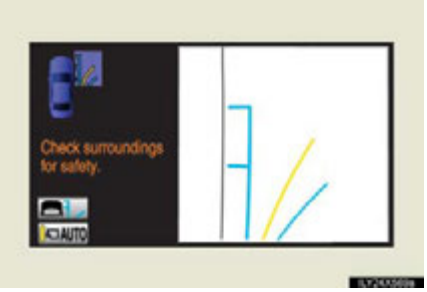
The image from the front camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in front of the vehicle for safety, for example in intersections with poor visibility.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Side monitor

The image from the side camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area to the right of the vehicle, for example when taking off and stopping, when turning right, etc. If displayed, the course line can be used as rough guide for steering wheel operation when turning right. (→P. 308)



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the screen mode

This system has a 2 screen mode and a 3 screen mode.

2 screen mode: Only the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display can be used.

3 screen mode: The wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display or the individual display can be used. The display can be switched between the simultaneous display and the individual display by operating the VIEW switch.



The screen mode is changed from the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen. The screen mode will change as the  or  buttons are touched.

If the screen is changed to the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen while the Lexus parking assist monitor is displayed, it is not possible to switch to the 3 screen mode. (The switch is not displayed.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the display in 3 screen mode

When in 3 screen mode, you can change the display from the simultaneous display to each individual display.

The screen changes as follows with each press of the VIEW switch.
When the wide view front monitor was displayed the previous time:

→ Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display →
← Side monitor ← Wide view front moni- ←

When the side monitor was displayed the previous time:

→ Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display →
← Wide view front moni- ← Side monitor ←

The wide view front monitor and side monitor individual displays are not accessible when the shift lever is in "R".

Automatic display mode

You can set the automatic display mode, which automatically changes the display.

Touch "AUTO".

When automatic display mode is on, you can have the system display automatically in the following situations:

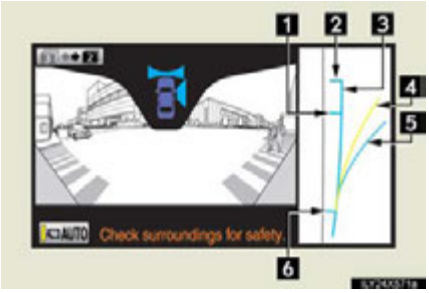
- When the shift lever is in "N", "D" or "S".
- When the shift lever is in a position other than "R", and the vehicle speed is approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

"AUTO" will not be displayed when the shift lever is in "R".

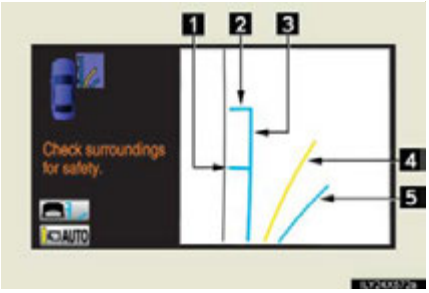
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the side monitor

▶ Simultaneous display



▶ Individual display



1 Front wheel contact point

Shows the position of the vehicle's front tire.

2 Vehicle front edge line

Shows the position of the vehicle's leading edge.

3 Vehicle width line (blue)

Indicates the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirror.

4 Projected course line (yellow)

Displays a rough guide of the vehicle path that moves according to the steering wheel position. Displayed along with the minimum projected turning circle.

5 Minimum projected turning circle (blue)

Displays the smallest turning circle projected by the system if the steering wheel is turned to full lock. Displayed when the steering wheel is turned to the right (further than 90° from straight ahead).

6 Rear wheel contact point

Shows the position of the vehicle's rear tire.

When in individual display mode, the right front view will be expanded and displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the course line display mode

▶ No course lines mode



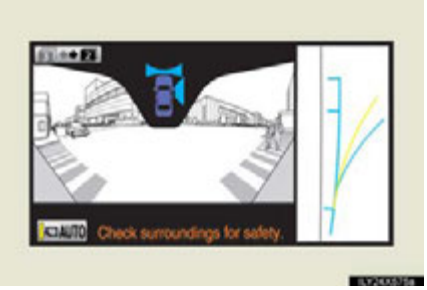
Vehicle width line is displayed.

▶ Minimum projected turning circle display mode



The minimum projected turning circle line is added to the no course lines mode.

▶ Turning course line display mode

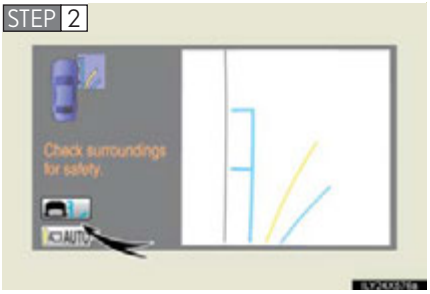


The projected course line is added to the minimum projected turning circle mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 1 Change to the side monitor individual display.

STEP 2



Touch  .

The course line display mode will change as follows each time the switch is touched.

No course lines mode → Turning course line display mode → Minimum projected turning circle display mode → (back to) No course lines mode

The selected mode will also be displayed on the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the vehicle width line & course line

▶ Vehicle width line

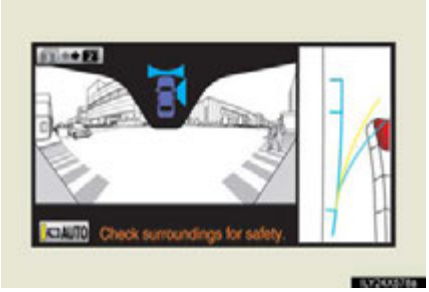


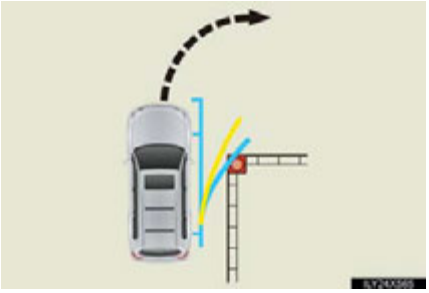


Use the vehicle width line to check the vehicle's distance from objects such as curbstones etc. As shown in the illustration, be sure that the vehicle width line does not overlap the object. If you also move the vehicle so that the vehicle width line and the object are parallel, you can park parallel to the object

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Minimum projected turning circle & projected course line

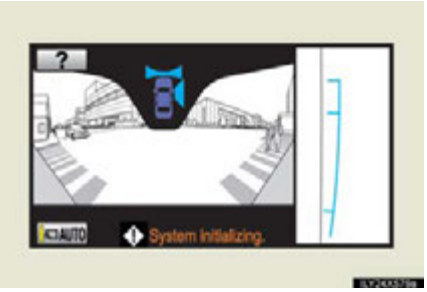




Use the minimum projected turning circle & projected course line (when displayed) to check the vehicle's path with relation to obstacles. If the minimum projected turning circle line (blue) is over the obstacle as shown in the illustration, or the obstacle falls within the minimum projected turning circle, if you turn with the minimum possible turning circle, the vehicle may collide with the object. When the projected course line (yellow) is displayed, be sure to operate the steering wheel so that the obstacle stays outside the projected course line until the vehicle has passed the object.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the battery is disconnected



If the battery is disconnected and connected again, the message "System initializing" will be displayed on the screen. The help screen appears when "?" is touched. Make a correction using the following method in accordance with the display.

Carry out one of the following.

- When the vehicle is stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, then all the way to the right.
- Drive for at least 5 minutes on a road with as few turns and curves and as little heavy traffic as possible.

When the screen returns to the original display, correction is complete.

If the above screen remains, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The wide view front & side monitor can be operated when**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

■ **Automatic system cancelation**

In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically.

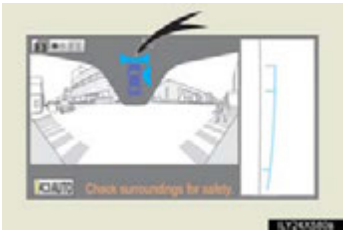
- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).
- When the shift lever is in "R".

■ **When the outside rear view mirrors have been folded**

The side monitor screen can be displayed even if the outside rear view mirrors have been folded. In this case, there will be a slight difference between the image displayed when the outside rear view mirrors are extended and when the outside rear view mirrors have been folded.

If the side monitor is displayed while the outside rear view mirrors are folded, you cannot check the area near the front edge of the vehicle as the base of the outside rear view mirrors will be in the way.

■ **When switched to from the Lexus parking assist monitor**

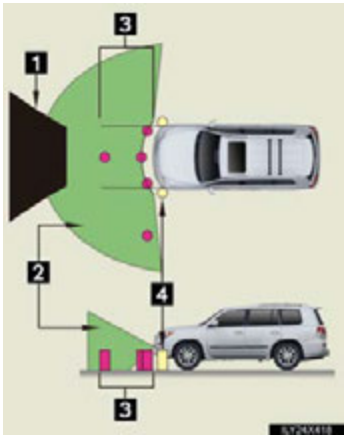


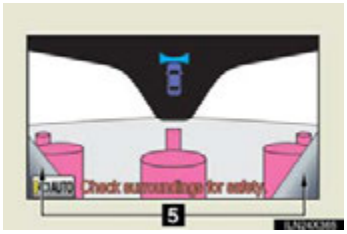
If the wide view front & side monitor is switched to from the Lexus parking assist monitor, the icon display area will flash to inform the driver that the currently displayed area is the front or side. The icon display area will continue to flash until the screen is turned off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Displayed area

▶ Front camera





1 Masking

This section is masked to prevent the driver from moving the vehicle while watching only the wide view front monitor screen. The driver must visually confirm this area directly.

2 Camera's field of view

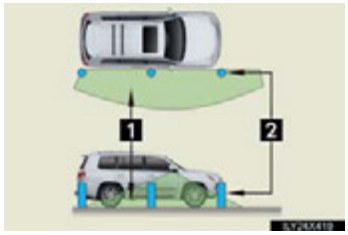
3 Objects visible to the camera

4 Objects not visible to the camera

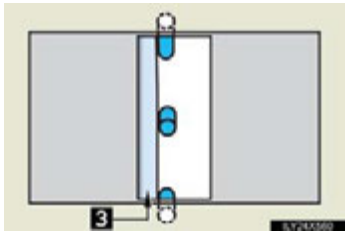
5 Parts of the vehicle (bumper, grille, etc.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Side camera



1 Camera's field of view
2 Objects visible to the camera
3 Right side of vehicle



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

■ **Wide view front & side monitor cameras**



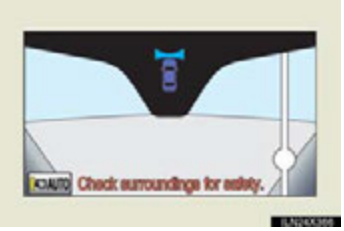
1 Side camera
2 Front camera

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the camera lens is damaged by flying stones.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect – A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it. The vertical streak also appears in the masked areas.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

CAUTION

When using the wide view front & side monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend solely on the monitor system.
- Always check visually to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the hood or the front passenger's door is not completely closed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

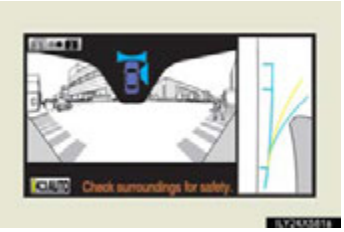
■ Conditions which may affect the wide view front & side monitor system

- If the front of the vehicle or the passenger side outside rear view mirror is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Situations unsuitable for wide view front & side monitor
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
- If the tires are changed, the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may be incorrect. When changing the tires, consult your Lexus dealer.
- Depending on the circumstances of the vehicle (number of passengers, amount of luggage, etc.), the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change. Be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

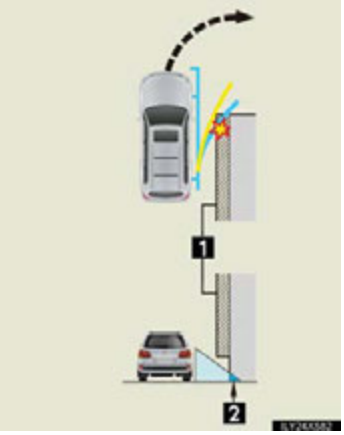
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ When a solid object is close by



The screen's guide lines are designed for level surfaces (road surface etc.) or flat walls etc. When driving near the obstacle, the obstacle may be displayed as outside the projected course line, and it may seem that there is no danger of a collision, however any sections protruding from the wall may project over the course line and the vehicle may actually collide with the obstacle.
In cases such as this were the projected course line passes close to obstacles, always visually check the surroundings for safety.



1 Protruding section of wall

2 Wall displayed on screen

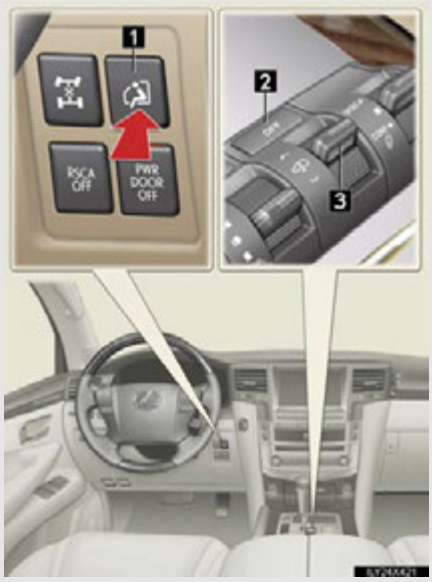
■ When using the wide view front & side monitor

Even if an obstacle is no longer visible on the side monitor, do not turn the steering wheel further in the direction the vehicle is turning until the vehicle has moved completely past the obstacle. If the steering wheel is turned to full lock, the vehicle will turn in the smallest possible turning circle, and may collide with the obstacle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension)

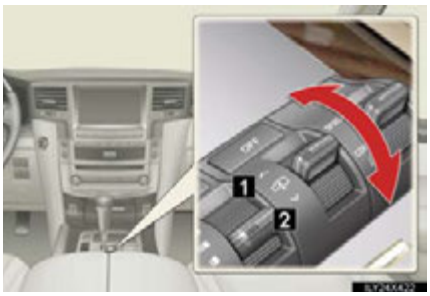
The 4-Wheel AHC adjusts the vehicle height in accordance with driving conditions. There are 3 selectable modes, “HI” (high), “N” (normal), and “LO” (low).



1 Easy access mode switch
2 Height control OFF switch
3 Height select switch

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting vehicle height



1 Higher
2 Lower

Display



1 Current mode

The vehicle is in the "N" (normal) height mode in the illustration. and show directions in which it is possible to adjust the vehicle height.

2 Height up
3 Height down
4 Height control "OFF" indicator

When the height control "OFF" indicator is displayed, the vehicle height will not change even if the height select switch is operated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle height modes

Push the height select switch to "∧" to step up one height mode, and pull to "∨" to step down one height mode. (Ex. When in the low height mode, push to "∧" once to switch to the normal height mode, and twice to switch to the high height mode.)

"HI" (high) height mode

Vehicle height is about 2.0 in. (50 mm) higher at the front, and about 2.4 in. (60 mm) higher at the rear than the normal mode height.
This mode is suitable when driving on bumpy roads or through water.
High height mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 18 mph (30 km/h).

"N" (normal) height mode

The standard vehicle height. This mode is suitable for ordinary driving.
When driving at high speeds, the vehicle height is automatically lowered by 0.8 in. (20 mm) in the front and 0.6 in. (15 mm) in the rear, to ensure excellent aerodynamic characteristics and stability.
If the vehicle speed drops, normal height mode is automatically resumed.

"LO" (low) height mode

Vehicle height is about 2.4 in. (60 mm) lower at the front, and about 1.6 in. (40 mm) lower at the rear than the normal mode height.
This mode allows easy access to the vehicle.
Low height mode is only available when the vehicle is travelling at 7 mph (12 km/h) or less. When the vehicle speed exceeds 7 mph (12 km/h), normal height mode is automatically selected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Conditions for changing the vehicle height mode

Some modes may not be selectable depending on the vehicle speed when the four-wheel drive control switch is in the "H4" position. Refer to the following table.

	Low mode	Normal mode	High mode
Under 7 mph (12 km/h)	Yes	Yes	Yes
7 mph (12 km/h) to 18 mph (30 km/h)	No	Yes	Yes
18 mph (30 km/h) or over	No	Yes	No

Easy access mode



You can select this mode for easy access and easy loading of the vehicle.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF within 30 seconds after the vehicle stops while this mode is on, the vehicle height is lowered automatically.

When the vehicle begins to lower a beep will sound twice, and while the vehicle is lowering the indicator light will flash to alert the driver and surrounding people that the vehicle is lowering.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The indicator light stops blinking, and comes on continuously to indicate that the shift is completed.

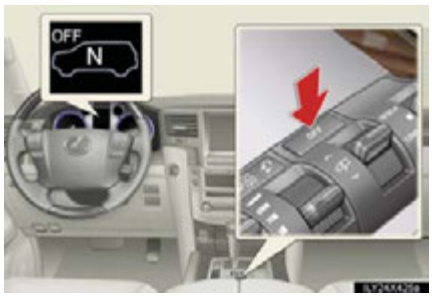
Easy access mode is available if the following conditions have been met:

- The vehicle height mode is in normal mode.
- The vehicle is stopped on a flat surface.
- The shift lever is in "P".
- The side door and the back door are not opened from the vehicle stopped to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to off.

The following method will cancel the vehicle lowering operation and raise the vehicle again:

- Press the height control OFF switch.
- Push the height select switch to "∧".

Disabling the height control



When the height control OFF switch is pressed with the vehicle stopped.

The height control "OFF" indicator will appear on the multi-information display, and the vehicle height will be fixed in the current mode. Push the switch again to turn the system back on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operating conditions**

- The engine must be running.
- Vehicle height control must be turned off.
- All side doors and the back door must be closed.

■ **Switching vehicle height mode while the engine is stopped**

- If the engine is stopped while the vehicle height is being lowered, lowering will continue.
- If any luggage is removed from the vehicle or if any occupants leave the vehicle within approximately 30 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being turned OFF, the vehicle height may be lowered by the auto leveling function.
- Operating the height select switch will have no effect while the engine is stopped.

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height when the four-wheel drive control switch is in the "L4" position**

If the vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) while driving on an uneven road with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "L4" position, high mode is automatically selected. (On even roads, the height mode will not change.)

■ **Automatic change in vehicle height when in the high mode**

- If the vehicle speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h) with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "H4" position, normal mode is automatically selected.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "L4" position, the vehicle height is lowered to 1.0 in. (25 mm) higher than the normal mode height. If the vehicle speed drops to 12 mph (20 km/h) or less, high mode is automatically resumed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Extra high mode**

If the vehicle becomes stuck or the Crawl Control system requests the vehicle height be raised, extra high mode may be automatically selected when the vehicle height is in high mode with the four-wheel drive control switch in the "L4" position. The vehicle height is raised to 0.8 in. (20 mm) higher than the high mode height, or slightly higher.

- Extra high mode will change back to high mode when:
  - The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is shifted to "H4".
- If you pull the height select switch to "∨" when in extra high mode, normal mode is selected.
- Extra high mode cannot be manually selected.

■ **Turning off the height control**

- The system will remain off until the height control OFF switch is pushed again, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.
- Even if the system is turned off, the system automatically modulated if the vehicle speed exceeds following.
  - 18 mph (30 km/h) with high or low mode
  - 50 mph (80 km/h) with normal mode

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Automatic leveling function**

The vehicle is adjusted to a fixed height for each mode, regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load.

- However the vehicle cannot be raised if the vehicle load exceeds the following limits:
  - Up to 4 occupants* plus approximately 661 lb. (300 kg) in the normal mode
  - Up to 4 occupants* plus approximately 441 lb. (200 kg) in the high mode

*: average weight 150 lb. (68 kg) per person

- If the vehicle height cannot be raised when in the normal mode, and "LO" appears on the display, the vehicle is loaded too heavily. Take extra care when driving in this condition.
  If the vehicle height cannot be raised even after unloading the vehicle, pull the height select switch to "∨" then push to "∧". If the vehicle height still cannot be raised, turn the ignition off then on again, then try once more.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped during driving**

The activation of the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle height to change. This is not a malfunction.

■ **If the vehicle height does not change**

If the vehicle is loaded too heavily, or the undercarriage has come into contact with the road surface, the vehicle height cannot be raised/lowered.

■ **In the following cases the 4-Wheel AHC will not operate**

- The brake pedal has been depressed for a few seconds or longer while the vehicle is stopped.
- Vehicle height control has not been frequently used.
- The suspension fluid temperature is lower than -22°F (-30°C).
- There is ice on the suspension.
- Driving on bumpy roads which may cause the suspension to fully elongate.
- If the steering wheel is abruptly turned more than 3/4 of a revolution with the center differential lock system activated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cold weather operation

It may take longer for the vehicle height to change if the suspension fluid temperature drops below 5°F (-15°C).

The 4-Wheel AHC does not operate when the suspension fluid temperature drops below -22°F (-30°C).

- In this case, even if the height select switch is pressed, the vehicle height will not change. Once the vehicle has been driven for a short time and the suspension fluid has been warmed to within normal operating limits, the 4-Wheel AHC will begin operating and the vehicle height will automatically change to the selected mode.
- When the suspension fluid is around -22°F (-30°C), the vehicle height may not be able to be raised, even if the 4-Wheel AHC is operating. In this case, pull the height select switch to "∨" then push to "∧" after driving for a short time longer to select the desired vehicle height.

Parking and stopping tips

- If you immediately stop the engine after off-road driving, the vehicle height may gradually lower. When parking, make sure there is nothing under the vehicle that may come in contact with the underbody. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.
- The vehicle height may change as the temperature changes when the engine is stopped. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.

Propeller shaft noise

If the vehicle height is adjusted on a slope, or with the shift lever in a position other than "P" or "N" while the vehicle is stopped, you may hear a sound caused by the expansion and contraction of the propeller shaft. This does not indicate a malfunction.

4-Wheel AHC failure warning

If a malfunction occurs in the 4-Wheel AHC, normal mode is automatically selected. However, the system may not switch to normal mode depending on the location of the malfunction.
The warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, and the 4-Wheel AHC cannot be activated until the malfunction is corrected.
Stop the engine and start it again. If the warning message turns off, the system is operating correctly. If the warning message continues to be displayed, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When switching the vehicle height mode

Before lowering the vehicle height, check that there are no people under or around the vehicle, and check for obstacles.
If you do not do this, body parts may be caught in the vehicle, possibly leading to an accident.

■ Using the high mode

The high mode should only be used when driving on rough roads, for example when driving off-road. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an accident.

■ When jacking up the vehicle or installing tire chains

Turn off the height control and stop the engine, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

■ When crossing rivers

Select the high mode and turn off the height control. Drive at 18 mph (30 km/h) or lower. Otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

■ If your vehicle must be towed

Put the vehicle height in the normal mode and turn off the height control, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

■ If your vehicle becomes stuck in a ditch

Turn off the height control, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

■ When loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier

Do not switch to high mode. Sudden steering could cause the vehicle to lose stability due to the vehicle's higher center of gravity, possibly leading to an accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **When parking in areas with limited overhead height**

After leaving the vehicle or unloading the luggage, the vehicle height may be slightly higher than normal. Take care when overhead height is limited.

■ **To avoid damage to the vehicle**

- Normal mode will be switched to automatically even if the vehicle is started off in low mode. Take care when overhead height is limited.
- Do not select the low mode when driving on bumpy roads, as the underbody of the vehicle may contact the road surface.
- When traveling on bumpy roads or through water, or when towing, turn off easy access mode.

■ **Avoid rapid changes to the vehicle height**

As the pump may overheat. Leave at a few seconds between selections when changing the vehicle height mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system)

AVS controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selecting an optimum driving mode assists good riding comfort and stability.



1 For driving on a bumpy road
2 For ordinary driving such as in the city traffic
3 For sporty type driving such as on winding mountain roads and high speed driving

Driving mode

- Mode 2 is suitable for ordinary driving.
- Mode 3 is suitable for heavy load or driving on a unpaved road.
- With the four-wheel drive control switch at "L4", the damping effect suitable for off-road driving will be provided.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Four-wheel drive system

Use the four-wheel drive control switch and center differential lock/unlock switch to select the following transfer and center differential modes.

Four-wheel drive control switch



1 "H4" (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

2 "L4" (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and hard pulling in sand or mud, etc.

Center differential lock/unlock switch



Lock the center differential when your vehicle's wheels get stuck in a ditch or when driving on a slippery or bumpy surface.

Unlock the center differential after the wheels have been freed, or after moving to a flat,

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting between “H4” and “L4”

Shifting from “H4” to “L4”

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “N”.

STEP 3 Push and shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “L4”.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns on.

Shifting from “L4” to “H4”

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “N”.

STEP 3 Shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “H4”.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns off.

The four-wheel drive control switch can be operated when

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in the “N” position.
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light

The indicator light blinks while shifting between “H4” and “L4”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Advice for driving on slippery roads**

- If you shift the four-wheel drive control switch to "L4" and the shift lever to the "2" range of "S" or "D" (vehicles with paddle shift switches) while driving in steep off-road areas, the output of the brake can be controlled effectively by the Active TRAC, which assists the driver to control the driving power of 4 wheels.
- Use the "1" range of "S" or "D" (vehicles with paddle shift switches) of the shift lever for maximum power and traction when your wheels get stuck or when driving down a steep incline.

■ **The center differential lock indicator light**

The indicator light blinks while locking/unlocking the center differential.

■ **The center differential lock/unlock switch can be operated when**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 mph (100 km/h).

■ **Locking/unlocking the center differential**

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 with the center differential locked, VSC is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and VSC OFF indicator lights come on.)
- If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not turn off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
- If the center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on, cancel the cruise control system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light blinks

- If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light continues to blink when using the four-wheel drive control switch, stop the vehicle completely, move the shift lever to "N" and operate the switch again.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

  Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in "P". You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode.

  To complete the shifting, stop the vehicle completely, return the shift lever to "N", and confirm that the shift was completed (the indicator turns on/off).
- If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the four-wheel drive control system may not be able to shift. When the engine is warmer operate the switch again.

If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light continues to blink even after attempting the above, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to shift between "H4" and "L4", and the center differential lock may not be operable. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

Never move the four-wheel drive control switch if the wheels have lost traction. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in "P". You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode. (→P. 332)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the center differential

- For normal driving on dry and hard surface roads, unlock the center differential.
- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the slippery or bumpy surface.
- Do not push the center differential lock/unlock switch when the vehicle is turning or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Crawl Control (with Turn Assist function)

Allows travel on extremely rough off-road surfaces at a fixed low speed without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. Minimizes loss of traction or vehicle slip when driving on slippery road surfaces, allowing for stable driving.

Crawl Control switches



1 ON/OFF switch

2 Speed selection switch

3 Multi-information display

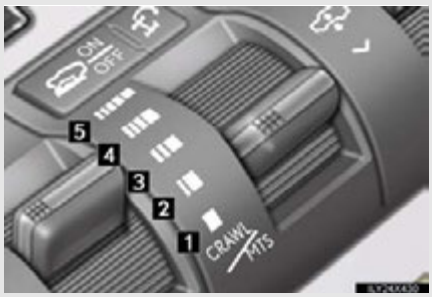
The operating status and speed select status of the Crawl Control are shown on the multi-information display.

4 Indicators

The Crawl Control indicator is lit and the slip indicator flashes when operating.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Speed modes



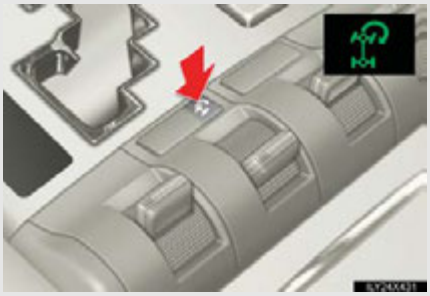
The following table shows some typical terrains and the recommended speed modes.

Mode		Road condition
1	Lo	Rock, mogul (downhill) and gravel (downhill)
2	Lo-Med	Mogul (uphill)
3	Med	
4	Med-Hi	Snow, mud, gravel (uphill), sand, dirt, mogul (uphill) and grass
5	Hi	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn Assist function

This function assists cornering performance in accordance with steering operation when driving through a tight corner. It maintains vehicle speed while driving and reduces the number of turns needed to navigate a corner that requires turning the wheel in the opposite direction.



Press the Turn Assist switch while Crawl Control is operating.

Turn Assist indicator will come on.

To turn the system off, press the switch again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the system is turned off

▶ Crawl Control

Press the ON/OFF switch while Crawl Control is operating. If the switch is turned off, the slip indicator and the Turn Assist indicator will go off (if the Turn Assist function is in use), the Crawl Control indicator will flash until the system has turned off completely, and a message stating that Crawl Control has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

When turning off Crawl Control while driving, stop the vehicle before the Crawl Control indicator turns off, or drive extremely carefully.

▶ Turn Assist function

Press the Turn Assist switch while the Turn Assist function is operating. When the switch is pressed, the Turn Assist indicator will go off, and a message stating that the Turn Assist function has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The Crawl Control and Turn Assist function can be operated when**

▶ Crawl Control

- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than "P" or "N".
- The four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4".
- The driver's door is closed.

▶ Turn Assist function

- Crawl Control is operating.
- The center differential is not locked.
- The accelerator and brake are not being operated.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than "P", "R" or "N".
- The steering wheel is turned very far.

■ **Automatic system cancelation**

▶ Crawl Control

In the following situations, the buzzer will sound intermittently and Crawl Control will be canceled automatically. In this event, the Crawl Control indicator will flash and then go off, the Turn Assist indicator will go off (if the Turn Assist function is in use), and a message stating that Crawl Control has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

- When the shift lever is moved to "P" or "N".
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in "H4".
- When the driver's door is opened.

▶ Turn Assist function

When the center differential is locked, the buzzer will sound intermittently and the Turn Assist function will be canceled automatically. In this event, the Turn Assist indicator will go off, and a message stating that the Turn Assist function has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Function limitations**

▶ Crawl Control

- In the following situations, brake control can be used to drive downhill at a constant speed. However, engine control is not available when driving uphill at a constant speed.
  - When switched to second start mode.
- In the following situation, engine control and brake control will stop temporarily. In this event, the Crawl Control indicator will flash.
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 15 mph (25 km/h).

▶ Turn Assist function

In the following situations, the Turn Assist function will stop temporarily. In this event, the Turn Assist indicator will flash.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the shift lever is moved to "R".

■ **When the Crawl Control system is operated continuously**

- If Crawl Control is used continuously for a long time, the buzzer will sound, a malfunction notification will be displayed on the multi-information display, the Crawl Control indicator will go off, and Crawl Control will be temporarily inoperable as a result of the brake system overheating. In this event, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place, and allow the brake system to cool down sufficiently until the "TRAC OFF" on the multi-information display goes off. (In the meantime, normal driving is possible.)
- If Crawl Control is used continuously for a long time, the buzzer will sound, the system will be temporarily canceled, and a malfunction notification will be displayed on the multi-information display as a result of the automatic transmission system overheating. Stop the vehicle in a safe place until the display goes off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the Crawl Control system**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in Crawl Control system.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the Crawl Control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on. (→P. 827, 852)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When using Crawl Control and Turn Assist function**

Do not rely solely on the Crawl Control and Turn Assist function. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

■ **These conditions may cause the system not to operate properly**

When driving on the following surfaces, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident:

- Extremely steep inclines.
- Extremely uneven surfaces.
- Snow-covered roads, or other slippery surfaces.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When using Turn Assist function**

The Turn Assist function is a function to assist turning performance when driving off road. The function may be less effective on paved road surfaces.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Multi-terrain Select

Multi-terrain Select is a system that assists drivability in off-road situations.

Select a mode that most closely matches the type of terrain on which you are driving from among 5 modes.
Brake control can be optimized in accordance with the selected mode.



1 Multi-terrain Select mode select switch

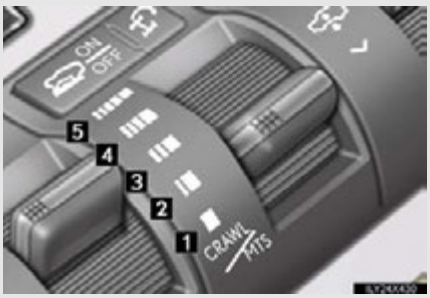
2 Multi-information display
Displays status information including operating status and road type selection.

3 Multi-terrain Select indicator

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selectable modes

A mode which matches the road conditions can be selected from among the following 5 modes.



1 MUD & SAND
2 LOOSE ROCK
3 MOGUL
4 ROCK & DIRT
5 ROCK

Mode		Road condition
1	MUD & SAND	Suitable for muddy roads, sandy roads, snow-covered roads, dirt trails and other slippery or dirty conditions
2	LOOSE ROCK	Suitable for slippery conditions consisting of mixtures of earth and loose rock
3	MOGUL	Suitable for very bumpy road conditions, such as mogul roads.
4	ROCK & DIRT	Suitable for very bumpy road conditions, such as mogul or rocky roads.
5	ROCK	Suitable for rocky terrain

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Multi-terrain Select control starting conditions

When all of the following conditions are satisfied, the Multi-terrain Select indicator will come on, the mode select screen will be displayed on the multi-information display, and Multi-terrain Select control will begin.

- The four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4".
- Both Active TRAC and VSC are not off.
- Crawl Control is off.

Switching modes

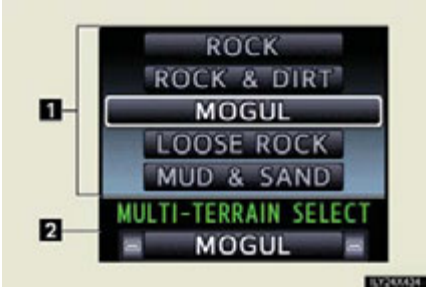


Operate the Multi-terrain Select mode select switch during Multi-terrain Select control to select a mode.

Once the mode is confirmed, the mode name will be displayed and the control will switch.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Statement on the multi-information display



1 Mode selection

Display the Multi-terrain Select mode.

The display switches in accordance with the pressing of the DISP switch (→P. 201) or the conditions of each system.

2 Mode status

Display the name of the selected mode.

Automatic system cancelation

In the following situations, the Multi-terrain Select indicator will go off, and Multi-terrain Select will be canceled automatically.

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in "H4".
- When Active TRAC and VSC are off.
- When Crawl Control is on.

When it is difficult to generate traction

MUD & SAND mode provides the largest amount of tire slippage, followed by LOOSE ROCK, MOGUL, ROCK & DIRT and ROCK mode.
Drivability can be improved by selecting a mode which provides a smaller amount of tire slippage than the current mode when the amount of tire slippage is large, or conversely selecting a mode which provides a larger amount of tire slippage than the current mode when the amount of tire slippage is small.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the vehicle is stuck

Switching the transfer and differential
For the operation of the following functions, refer to the following pages.

- Four-wheel drive system (→P. 332)
- Center differential lock (→P. 332)

When the brake system operates continuously

The brake system may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, the "TRAC OFF" will be displayed on the multi-information display, and Multi-terrain Select will be temporarily inoperable. In this event, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place, and allow the brake system to cool down sufficiently. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)
After a short time, the message on the multi-information display will go off, and you will be able to use Multi-terrain Select.

When there is a malfunction in the system

The slip indicator light will come on. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

When using the Multi-terrain Select

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- There is a chance that the selected mode may not be the most appropriate in terms of road conditions such as pitch, slipperiness, undulation, etc. (→P. 345)
- Multi-terrain Select is not intended to expand the limits of the vehicle. Check the road conditions thoroughly beforehand, and drive safely and carefully.

⚠ NOTICE

Precaution for use

The Multi-terrain Select is intended for use during off-road driving. Do not use the system at any other time.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface, or in off-road conditions (such as rough roads, sand and mud).

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

Active TRAC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the 4 wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope.

VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)

Helps to adjust the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement.

PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 357

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer Sway Control

Helps the driver to control trailer sway by selectively applying brake pressure for individual wheels and reducing engine torque when trailer sway is detected.

Trailer Sway Control is part of the VSC system and will not operate if VSC turned off or experiences a malfunction.

When the VSC/Trailer Sway Control/Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



The slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/Trailer Sway Control/Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system or Trailer Sway Control is operating.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To disable Active TRAC and/or VSC and Trailer Sway Control

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

Turning off Active TRAC



Quickly push and release the button to turn off Active TRAC.

The "TRAC OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display.

This mode can be used when the transfer mode is H4.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

Turning off Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control



Push and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "TRAC OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRAC has been disabled even if the VSC OFF switch has not been pressed**

Active TRAC, hill-start assist control, Crawl Control cannot be operated. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic reactivation of Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control**

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off after turning off the Active TRAC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

■ **Automatic Active TRAC reactivation**

If only the Active TRAC system is turned off, the Active TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Automatic Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control reactivation**

If the Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **If the brake system overheats**

The brake system may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, and the "TRAC OFF" will be displayed on the multi-information display, and Active TRAC and hill-start assist control will be temporarily inoperable. In this event, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place, and allow the brake system to cool down sufficiently until the "TRAC OFF" on the multi-information display goes off. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the Multi Terrain ABS, brake assist, Active TRAC, VSC, Trailer Sway Control, hill-start assist control and VGRS**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the Multi Terrain ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the Multi Terrain ABS is activated.

■ **Hill-start assist control is operational when**

- The shift lever is in "D" or "S".
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **VGRS is disabled in the following situations**

- During stopping or the steering wheel has been moved for a long time while driving at lower speeds.
- After the engine is restarted at less than -22°F (-30°C).
- If you disconnect the battery with the steering wheel turned, the center position of the steering wheel could be slightly and temporary changed. To initialize the VGRS, drive for a short while.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:

■ The Multi Terrain ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ Stopping distance when the Multi Terrain ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The Multi Terrain ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations.

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven roads

■ Active TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the Active TRAC is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ If the hill-start assist control does not operate effectively

Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control are off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to help to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control unless necessary.

■ When the VSC and Trailer Sway Control are activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully.
Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the specified tire pressure level.

The Multi Terrain ABS, Active TRAC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Trailer Sway Control precaution

The Trailer Sway Control system is not able to reduce trailer sway in all situations. Depending on many factors such as the conditions of the vehicle, trailer, road surface, and driving environment, the Trailer Sway Control system may not be effective. Refer to your trailer owner's manual for information on how to tow your trailer properly.

■ If trailer sway occurs

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
  Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
  Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (→P. 397)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Pre-Collision System*

When the radar sensor detects possibility of a frontal collision, the pre-collision systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats only)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.
The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 94)

However, when the VSC system is disabled, the system will not operate in the event of skidding.

Pre-collision brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed. The system may not warn the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer when the system detects and judges braking operations.

AVS control

When the system determines that there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the AVS optimizes the damping effect. (→P. 331)

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

When traveling on a road with very light traffic and very little to reflect the radar waves emitted by the radar sensor, the system may decide that the radar sensor is dirty, even if the sensor is not actually dirty. The system will automatically restore itself when reflected radar waves are detected.

Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

The pre-collision system is operational when

- Pre-collision seat belts (situation 1)
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-collision seat belts (situation 2)
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

● Pre-collision brake assist

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● AVS

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of collision**

● When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve

● When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve

● When driving over a narrow iron bridge

● When there is a metal object on the road surface

● When driving on an uneven road surface (nose up, nose down)

● When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn

● When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front

● When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel

● When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel

● When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs

● When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment

● When passing through certain toll gates

● When passing through an overpass

● When passing through a tunnel

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Situations in which the pre-collision system does not function properly**

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding such as the VSC system off
- When your vehicle is steeply inclined
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment

■ **Automatic cancelation of the pre-collision system**

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc. that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-collision system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system, or if the system is temporarily unusable**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 826, 837)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID : HYQDNMWR005

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may become inaccurate or malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

Additional information for off-road driving

▶ For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:

To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations.

- State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
- State Motor Vehicle Bureau
- Recreational Vehicle Clubs
- U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ To prevent the water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

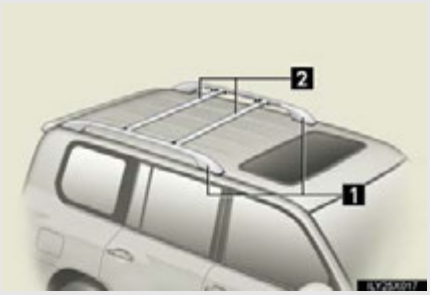
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Roof luggage carrier (if equipped)



1 Roof rails
2 Cross rails

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

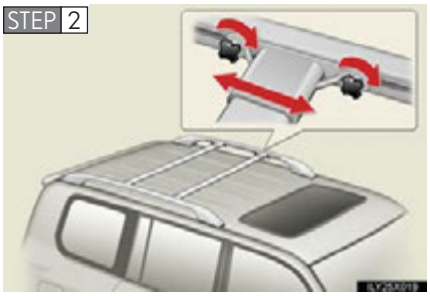
Adjusting the position of cross rails (if equipped)

STEP 1



Turn the knobs counterclockwise to release the cross rails.

STEP 2



Slide the cross rails to the appropriate position for loading luggage and turn the knobs clockwise to tighten the cross rails securely.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

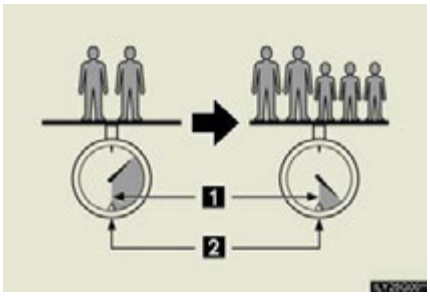
For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 375)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Calculation formula for your vehicle



1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) (→P. 886)

When 2 people with the combined weight of A lb. (kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) of B lb. (kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be C lb. (kg) as follows:

B*2 lb. (kg) – A*1 lb. (kg) = C*3 lb. (kg)

*1: A = Weight of people

*2: B = Total load capacity

*3: C = Available cargo and luggage load

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of D lb. (kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced E lb. (kg) as follows:

C lb. (kg) – D*4 lb. (kg) = E*5 lb. (kg)

*4: D = Additional weight of people

*5: E = Available cargo and luggage load

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment.

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking, sudden swerving or in an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the items may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident.
  - Driver's feet
  - Front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
  - Auxiliary box or tray that has no lid
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Weight of the load

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

■ Roof luggage carrier precautions (if equipped)

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent.

When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 886)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 154 lb. (70 kg) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ **Cross rail adjustment (if equipped)**

Make sure the cross rails are locked securely by pushing forward and rearward them.
Failure to do so may cause an accident or serious injury in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

NOTICE

■ **Cross rail adjustment (if equipped)**

Do not remove the cross rail stoppers, or the moon roof may be damage when it is tilted.

■ **When loading the luggage**

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, TWR (Trailer Weight Rating) and cargo capacity.

■ **Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight): →P. 886**

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

■ **Seating capacity: 8 occupants (Front 2, Rear 6)**

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

■ **TWR (Trailer Weight Rating): →P. 386, 886**

TWR means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that your vehicle is able to tow.

■ **Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

■ **Total load capacity and seating capacity**

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 775)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

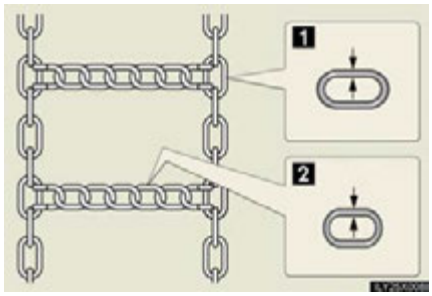
When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to "P" without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



1 Side chain
(0.20 in. [5 mm] in diameter)
2 Cross chain
(0.25 in. [6.3 mm] in diameter)

Regulations on the use of tire chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

Tire chains

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install the chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying manual.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended level of tire inflation pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

■ When installing tire chains

Turn off the vehicle height control.
The vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident. (→P. 320)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ **Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer can have an adverse impact on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, you must not overload your vehicle or trailer. You must also ensure that you are using appropriate towing equipment, that the towing equipment has been installed correctly and used properly, and that you employ the requisite driving habits.

Vehicle-trailer stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake performance and setting, trailer brakes, the hitch and hitch systems (if equipped).

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with your trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

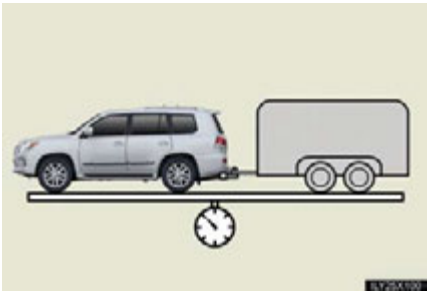
Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as towing kits, etc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

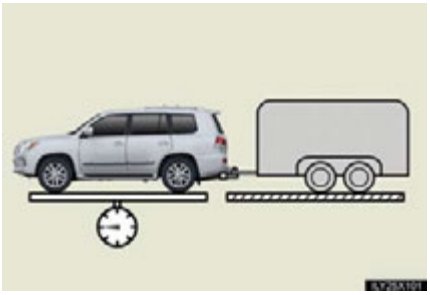
Towing related terms

GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating)



The maximum allowable gross combination weight. The gross combination weight is the sum of the total vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the weight of the trailer being towed (including the cargo in the trailer).

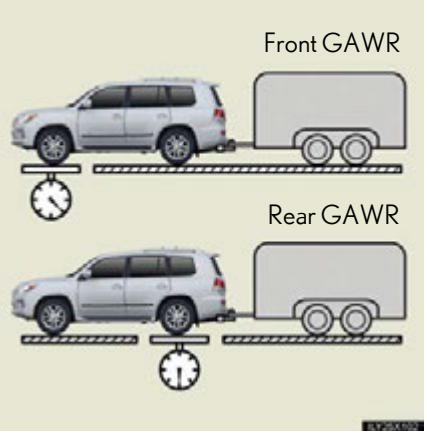
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)



The maximum allowable gross vehicle weight. The gross vehicle weight is the total weight of the vehicle. When towing a trailer, it is the sum of the vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the tongue weight.

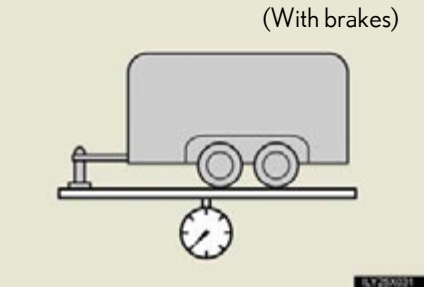
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)



The maximum allowable gross axle weight. The gross axle weight is the load placed on each axle (front and rear).

TWR (Trailer Weight Rating)



The maximum allowable gross trailer weight. The gross trailer weight is the sum of the trailer weight and the weight of the cargo in the trailer.

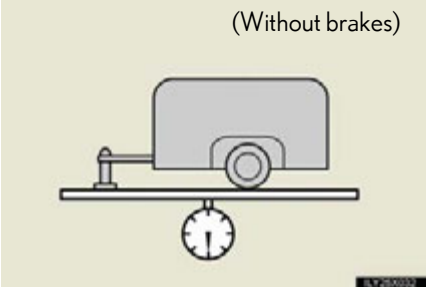
TWR is calculated assuming base vehicle with one driver, one front passenger, towing package, hitch and hitch systems (if required).

Additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the vehicle will reduce the trailer weight rating so as not to exceed GCWR, GVWR and GAWR.

If the gross trailer weight exceeds 3000 lb. (1360 kg), it is recommended to use a trailer with 2 or more axles.

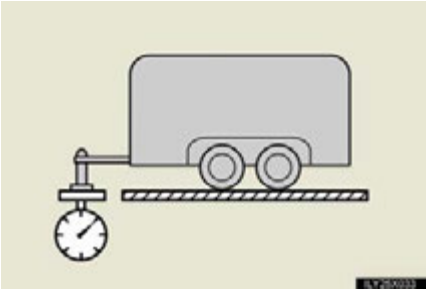
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Unbraked TWR (Unbraked Trailer Weight Rating)



The trailer weight rating for towing a trailer without a trailer service brake system.

Tongue Weight



The load placed on the trailer hitch ball. (→P. 387)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Weight limits

- The gross trailer weight must never exceed 7000 lb. (3175 kg).
- The gross combination weight must never exceed 13400 lb. (6078 kg).



- The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the GVWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- The gross axle weight on each axle must never exceed the GAWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- If the gross trailer weight is over the unbraked TWR, trailer service brakes are required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lb. (907 kg), a sway control device with sufficient capacity is required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lb. (2268 kg), a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity is required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

GCWR, TWR, Unbraked TWR, Fifth wheel and Gooseneck towing TWR

Confirm that the gross trailer weight, gross combination weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and tongue weight are all within the limits.

■ **GCWR***
13400 lb. (6078 kg)

■ **TWR***
7000 lb. (3175 kg)

■ **Unbraked TWR***
1000 lb. (454 kg)

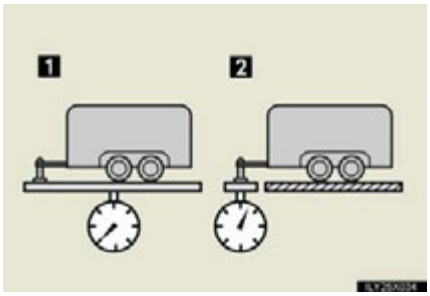
*: This model meets the tow-vehicle trailering requirement of SAE International per SAE J2807.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer Tongue Weight

- A recommended tongue weight varies in accordance with the types of trailers or towing as described below.
- To ensure the recommended values shown below, the trailer must be loaded by referring to the following instructions.
  - Tongue Weight

    The gross trailer weight should be distributed so that the tongue weight is 9% to 11%. (Tongue weight/Gross trailer weight × 100 = 9% to 11%)



1 Gross trailer weight
2 Tongue weight

If using a weight distributing hitch when towing, return the front axle to the same weight as before the trailer connection.

If front axle weight cannot be measured directly, measure the front fender height above the front axle before connection. Adjust weight distributing hitch torque until front fender is returned to the same height as before connection.

The gross trailer weight, gross axle weight and tongue weight can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

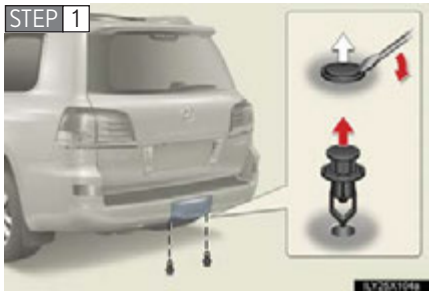
Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Use only a hitch that conforms to the gross trailer weight requirement of your vehicle.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coating of grease.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting hole in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

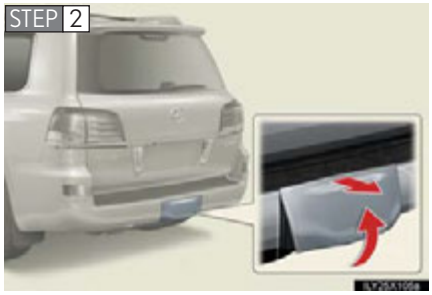
Removing hitch cover

STEP 1



Remove the clip.

STEP 2



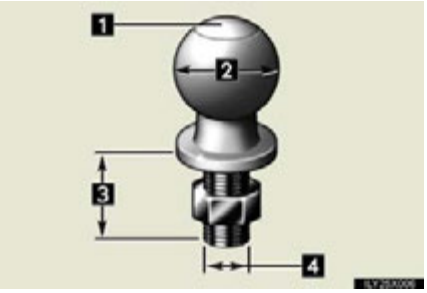
Grasp the lower edge of the hitch cover and raise the cover.

When reattaching the cover, reverse the steps listed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting trailer ball

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.



1 Trailer ball load rating

Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.

2 Ball diameter

Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.

Trailer class	Typical trailer ball size
IV	2 5/16 in.
II and III	2 in.
I	1 7/8 in.

3 Shank length

Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut by at least 2 threads.

4 Shank diameter

Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Positions for towing hitch receiver



1 Hitch receiver pin hole position: 45.3 in. (1151 mm)

Connecting trailer lights



Use the wire harness stored in the rear end under the vehicle body.

Please consult your dealer when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Connecting and disconnecting a trailer

Stop your vehicle and a trailer in line and perform the following:

● Connecting a trailer

STEP 1 Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the "LO" (low) mode.

STEP 2 Turn off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 3 Connect a trailer.

STEP 4 Turn on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 5 Select the "N" (normal) mode with the height select switch.

When a vehicle loaded with four occupants tows a trailer of about 4000 lb. (1800 kg) with more than about 400 lb. (180 kg) tongue load, the normal mode may not be selected. However, there is no problem to continue normal driving. Drive with sufficient care because of large load.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Disconnecting a trailer

STEP 1 Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the “LO” (low) mode. (Make sure the vehicle height is in the “LO” mode by pulling the switch to “∨” on the height select switch.)

STEP 2 Turn off the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 3 Set the supporting leg of a trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 4 in. (100 mm).

STEP 4 Turn on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

STEP 5 Wait for about 20 seconds until the rear vehicle height is lowered by the automatic leveling function.

STEP 6 Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If not, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 5.

STEP 7 Move the vehicle forward in the “LO” mode where the hitch does not touch anything in the “N” (normal) mode.

STEP 8 Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the “N” mode.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid an accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

- Speed limits for towing a trailer vary by state or province. Do not exceed the posted towing speed limit.
- Lexus recommends that the vehicle-trailer speed limit is 65 mph (104 km/h) on a flat, straight, dry road. Do not exceed this limit, the posted towing speed limit or the speed limit for your trailer as set forth in your trailer owner's manual, whichever is lowest. Instability of the towing vehicle-trailer combination (trailer sway) increases as speed increases. Exceeding speed limits may cause loss of control.
- Before starting out, check the trailer lights, tires and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle-trailer combination.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to the right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in the trailer jackknifing and loss of vehicle control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making a turn.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a wider than normal turning radius.
- Slow down before making a turn, in crosswinds, on wet or slippery surfaces, etc.
  Increasing vehicle speed can destabilize the trailer.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not put the transmission in "D".
  If in the S mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 5 or lower.
- Instability happens more frequently when descending steep or long downhill grades. Before descending, slow down and downshift. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 878)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle's and the trailer's wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in "P". Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

STEP 1 Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

STEP 2 Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle's and trailer's wheels.

STEP 3 When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

STEP 4 Apply the parking brake firmly.

STEP 5 Shift into "P" and turn off the engine.

● When restarting after parking on a slope:

STEP 1 With the transmission in "P", start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

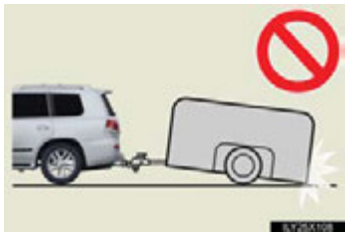
STEP 2 Shift into "D" or "R" (if reversing).

STEP 3 Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

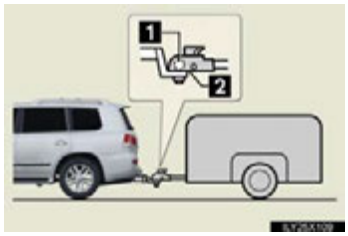
STEP 4 Have someone retrieve the blocks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Matching trailer ball height to trailer coupler height



No matter which class of tow hitch applies, for a more safe trailer hookup, the trailer ball setup must be the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.



1 Trailer ball

2 Coupler

Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P. 895)
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work as required by law.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The trailer is level when it is hitched.
  Do not drive if the trailer is not level, and check for improper tongue weight, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **AVS (adaptive variable suspension system)**

The suspension can be switched for improvement in driveability. (→P. 331)

■ **Break-in schedule**

If your vehicle is new or equipped with any new power train components (such as an engine, transmission, differential or wheel bearing), Lexus recommends that you do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km).

After the vehicle has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km), you can start towing. However, for the next 500 miles (800 km), drive the vehicle at a speed of less than 50 mph (80 km/h) when towing a trailer, and avoid full throttle acceleration.

■ **Maintenance**

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.

■ **If trailer sway occurs**

One or more factors (crosswinds, passing vehicles, rough roads, etc.) can adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing instability.

- If trailer swaying occurs:
  - Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
    Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
  - Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
    Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (if enabled, Trailer Sway Control can also help to stabilize the vehicle and trailer.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● After the trailer swaying has stopped:

- Stop in a safe place. Get all occupants out of the vehicle.
- Check the tires of the vehicle and the trailer.
- Check the load in the trailer.
  Make sure the load has not shifted.
  Make sure the tongue weight is appropriate, if possible.
- Check the load in the vehicle.
  Make sure the vehicle is not overloaded after occupants get in.

If you cannot find any problems, the speed at which trailer swaying occurred is beyond the limit of your particular vehicle-trailer combination.
Drive at a lower speed to prevent instability. Remember that swaying of the towing vehicle-trailer increases as speed increases.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Trailer towing precautions

● To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury. Vehicle stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake setting and performance, and the hitch. Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer.

● Set the vehicle height to the "LO" mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC when you connect a trailer, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident. (→P. 320)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Do not exceed the TWR, unbraked TWR, GCWR, GVWR or GAWR.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lb. (907 kg), a sway control device with sufficient capacity is required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lb. (2268 kg), a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity is required.
- Adjust the tongue weight within the appropriate range. Place heavier loads as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- Do not exceed 65 mph (104 km/h), the posted towing speed limit or the speed limit for your trailer as set forth in your trailer owner's manual, whichever is lowest. Slow down sufficiently before making a turn, in crosswinds, on wet or slippery surface, etc. to help avoid an accident. If you experience a vehicle-trailer instability from reducing a certain speed, slow down and make sure you keep your vehicle speed under the speed of which you experience the instability.
- Do not make jerky, abrupt or sharp turns.
- Do not apply the brakes suddenly as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of vehicle control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue weight capacities.
- Do not use cruise control when towing.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Vehicle-trailer instability is more likely on steep long down hills. Before descending steep or long downhill grades, slow down and downshift. Do not make sudden downshifts when descending steep or long downhill grades. Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be physically capable of towing a higher weight, the operator must determine the maximum weight rating of the particular hitch assembly and never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer-hitch. Exceeding the maximum weight rating set by the trailer-hitch manufacturer can cause an accident resulting in death or serious personal injuries.

When towing a trailer

Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to any applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

- If the gross trailer weight exceeds unbraked TWR, trailer brakes are required. Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

NOTICE

When installing a trailer hitch

Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.

Do not directly splice trailer lights

Do not directly splice trailer lights. Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid serious damage to your vehicle

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior features 3

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen 404
Set up screen 412
Information screen..... 429
Voice command system 431
Mobile Assistant..... 442

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front air conditioning system 444
Rear air conditioning system 456
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers..... 460
Windshield wiper de-icer 461

3-3. Using the audio system

Audio system type..... 462
Using the radio..... 487
Using the CD/DVD player 507
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 509
Playing DVD video 515
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information..... 529
Listening to Bluetooth® audio..... 541
Listening to a USB memory 552
Listening to an iPod 562
Optimal use of the audio/video system 572
Using the AUX port 574
Using the steering wheel audio switches 576

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system features..... 579
Using the radio..... 587
Using the radio (internet radio broadcast) 589
Playing an audio CD/CD text..... 590

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing WMA/ MP3 discs 591
Playing a Bluetooth® audio 593
Playing a USB memory 596
Playing iPod 598
Playing DVD video 600
DVD player and DVD video disc information 609
Using the video mode 611

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 616
Using a Bluetooth® phone 625
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone) 648
Setting the Bluetooth® 673

3-6. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 686
• Interior lights 687
• Personal lights 688
• Luggage compartment light 689

3-7. Using the storage features

List of storage features 690
• Glove box 691
• Console box 692
• Overhead console 693
• Cup holders 694
• Bottle holders 696
• Card holder 697
• Auxiliary boxes 697

3-8. Other interior features

Cool box 699
Sun visors 701
Vanity mirrors 702
Ashtrays 703
Cigarette lighter 704
Power outlets 705
Heated steering wheel 707
Seat heaters and ventilators 709
Armrest 712
Assist grips 713
Floor mats 714
Luggage compartment features 716
Garage door opener 718
Safety Connect 726

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Touch screen

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display etc.



Button	Page
“CLIMATE”	P. 444
“AUDIO”	P. 462
“MAP VOICE”/”DEST”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“INFO”	P. 429/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
	P. 616
“SETUP”	P. 412

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Initial screen



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

Images shown on the initial screen can be changed to suit individual preferences. (→P. 419)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the display

The contrast and brightness of the screen display and the image the camera displays can be adjusted. (For information regarding audio/video screen adjustment: →P. 522)

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button and the touch "Display" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Map•Menu" or "Camera" to display the desired screen.

▶ Display screen (Map•Menu)



If the map menu adjust screen does not appear, touch "Map•Menu".

▶ Display screen (Camera)



If the camera adjust screen does not appear, touch "Camera".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3 Touch "<" or ">" to select the desired function ("Contrast" or "Brightness") and then touch the desired screen button to adjust contrast and brightness.

	"-"	"+"
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

STEP 4 After adjusting the screen, touch "OK".

■ **When using the touch screen**

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- To operate the touch screen, press touch screen buttons properly with finger pad.
- When dew condensation occurs inside the touch screen, it is sometimes difficult to operate the display properly. In such case, please leave the screen untouched and do not operate the touch screen until dew condensation disappears.
- When the screen is viewed through polarized sunglasses, a rainbow pattern may appear on the screen due to optical characteristics of the screen. If this is disturbing, please operate the screen without polarized sunglasses.
- Dimmed screen buttons cannot be operated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing between day mode and night mode



To display the screen in day mode, even with the headlight switch on, touch "Day Mode" for brightness and contrast control.

If the screen is set to day mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized even with the engine turned off.

In the following conditions, the displays condition is not changed to night mode even if the headlight switch is turned on:

- The instrument panel light control switch is turned fully to the right.
- The vehicle is in a bright area, such as outside in direct sunlight.

To turn off the display

The display goes off when "Screen Off" is touched. To turn the screen back on, press any button. The selected screen appears.

NOTICE

To avoid damaging the touch screen

- To prevent damaging the screen, lightly touch the screen buttons with your finger.
- Do not operate or rub the screen with a ballpoint pen, a mechanical pencil, finger nail, a pointy and/or hard object because this will damage the screen.
- Do not use objects other than your finger to touch the screen.
- Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the screen, as they may damage the touch screen.

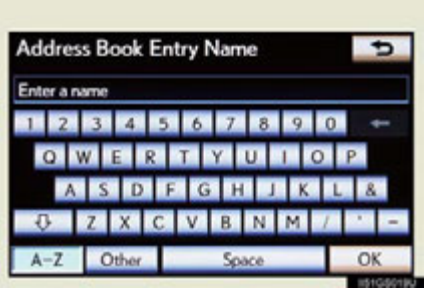
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inputting letters and numbers/list screen operation

Letters and numbers can be input via the screen.

■ To input letters and numbers/symbols

▶ Letters and numbers



Touch the keys directly to enter letters, numbers or symbols.

: Touch to erase one character. Touch and hold to continue erasing characters.

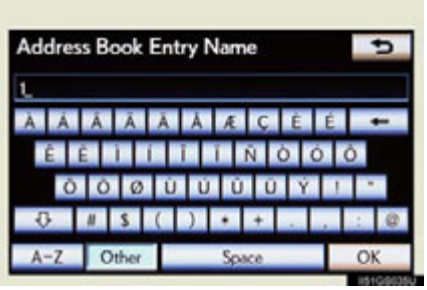
"A-Z": To change letters and numbers

"Other": To display symbols

: To enter in lower case

: To enter in upper case

▶ Symbols

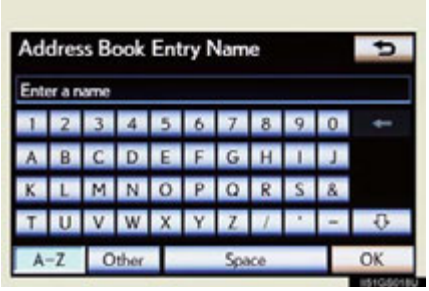


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

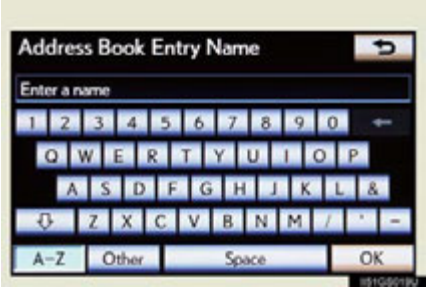
■ **Layout type**

Keyboard layout can be changed. (→P. 419)

▶ “ABC” type



▶ “QWERTY” type



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

List screen operation



When a list is displayed, use the appropriate screen button to scroll through the list.

: Touch to skip to the next or previous page. Touch and hold or to scroll through the displayed list.

: This indicates the displayed screen's position.

: If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

If you touch

The display returns to the previous screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Set up screen

You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.
Press the “SETUP” button to display the “Setup” screen.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Switch	Page
“Display”	P. 406/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“General”	P. 414/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Voice”	P. 425/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Navigation”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Vehicle”	P. 426/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“Phone”	P. 427
“Bluetooth*”	P. 427
“Audio”	P. 428
“Other”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual

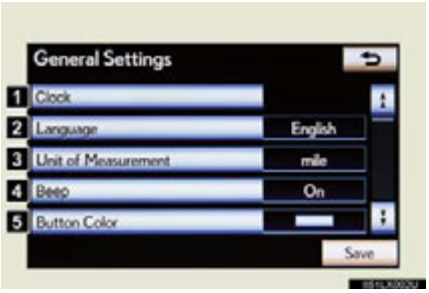
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

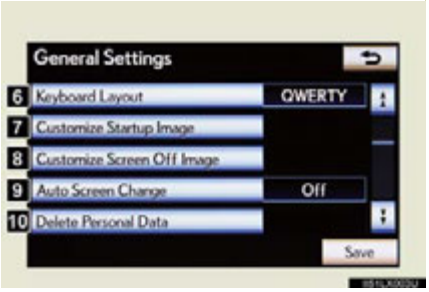
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

General settings

This screen is used for language selection and the on/off settings of operation sounds and automatic screen change, etc.

Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.







1 Clock settings
2 Selecting a language
3 Unit of measurement
4 Beep on/off
5 Selecting a button color
6 Selecting keyboard layout
7 Changing the startup image
8 Changing the screen off image
9 Auto screen change
10 Delete personal data
11 Software update*
12 Gracenote database update*

Touch “Save” after changing settings.

*: For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

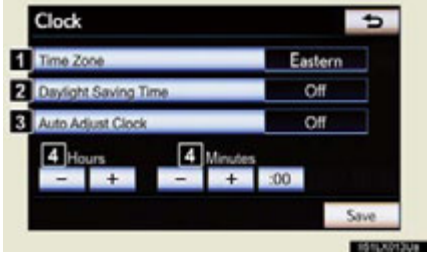
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Clock settings

Used for changing time zones, the on/off settings of daylight saving time and automatic adjustment of the clock.

STEP 1 Touch “Clock” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch the items to be set.

1 Time zone
2 Daylight saving time
3 Automatic adjustment of the clock
4 Manual clock setting

STEP 3 Touch “Save”.

● Time zone

A time zone can be selected and GMT can be set.

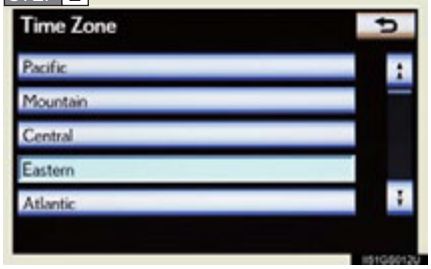
STEP 1



Touch “Time Zone”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 2



Touch the desired time zone.



If “Other” is touched, the zone can be adjusted manually. Touch “+” or “-” to adjust the time zone and then touch “OK”.

● Daylight saving time

Touch to select “On” or “Off” for daylight saving time.

● Automatic adjustment of the clock

Touch to select “On” or “Off” for automatic adjustment of the clock.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Manual clock settings

When “Auto Adjust Clock” is turned “Off”, the clock can be manually adjusted.



Touch the items to be set.

1 Adjust hours

2 Adjust minutes

3 Round to the nearest hour*

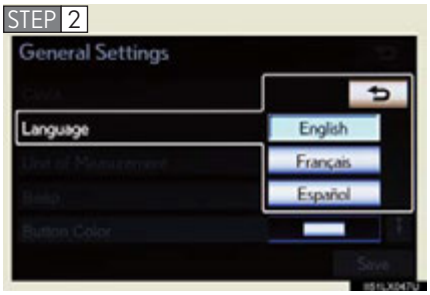
*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

■ Selecting a language

The language can be changed.

STEP 1 Touch “Language” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired screen button.

STEP 3 Touch “Yes”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

STEP 4 Touch “Save”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Unit of measurement**

Distance unit can be changed.

This function is available only in English or Spanish. To change language, see "Selecting a language". (→P. 417)

STEP 1 Touch "Unit of Measurement" on the "General Settings" screen.

STEP 2



Touch "km" or "mile".

The previous screen will be displayed.

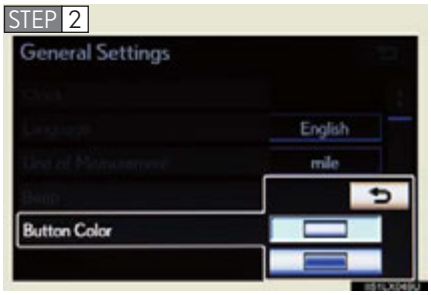
STEP 3 Touch "Save".

■ **Selecting a button color**

The color of the screen buttons can be changed.

STEP 1 Touch "Button Color" on the "General Settings" screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired screen button color.

The previous screen will be displayed.

STEP 3 Touch "Save".

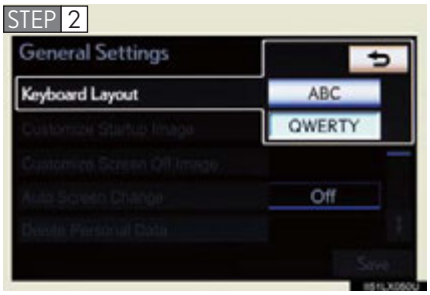
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Selecting a keyboard layout

Keyboard layout can be changed.

STEP 1 Touch “Keyboard Layout” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch “ABC” or “QWERTY”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

STEP 3 Touch “Save”.

■ Changing the startup image

An image can be copied from a USB memory and used as the startup image.

When saving the images to a USB memory, name the folder that the startup image is saved to “StartupImage”. If these folder names are not used, the system cannot download the images. (The folder names are case sensitive.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Transferring data

STEP 1



Press the lid, open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

STEP 2 Touch “Customize Startup Image” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 3



Touch “Transfer”.

STEP 4 Touch “Yes”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Setting the startup image

STEP 1 Touch “Customize Startup Image” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired image.



STEP 3 Touch “Save”.

● Deleting transferred image

STEP 1 Touch “Customize Startup Image” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Touch “Delete All”.



STEP 3 Touch “Yes”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing the screen off image

Touch "Screen Off" on the "Display" screen to turn off the screen. An image can be copied from a USB memory and can be set to display when "Screen Off" is touched.

When saving the images to a USB memory, name the folder that the screen off image is saved to "DisplayOffImage". If these folder names are not used, the system cannot download the images. (The folder names are case sensitive.)

● Transferring data

STEP 1



Press the lid, open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

STEP 2 Touch "Customize Screen Off Image" on the "General Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Transfer".

STEP 4 Touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Setting the screen off image

STEP 1 Touch “Customize Screen Off Image” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired image.

STEP 3 Touch “Save”.

● Deleting transferred images

STEP 1 Touch “Customize Screen Off Image” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch “Delete All”.

STEP 3 Touch “Yes”.

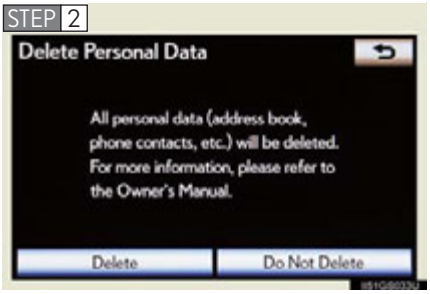
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Delete personal data

This function is not available while driving.

STEP 1 Touch “Delete Personal Data” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch “Delete”.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

STEP 3 Touch “Yes”.

The following personal data can be deleted or returned to their default settings:

- Maintenance conditions
- Maintenance information off setting
- Address book
- Areas to avoid
- Previous points
- Route guidance
- Route trace
- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Phone sound settings
- Phone display settings
- Message settings
- Audio setting
- Bluetooth® audio setting
- Startup image data
- Screen off image data

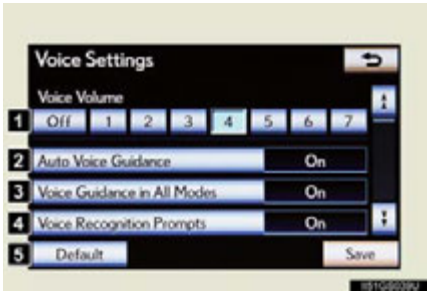
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

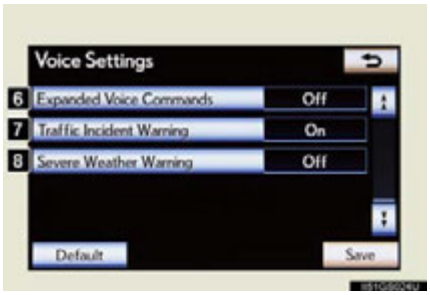
■ About startup or screen off images

- The images file extension is JPG or JPEG.
- The images file name, including the file extension, can be up to 32 characters.
- Image files of 10 MB or less can be saved.
- Up to 3 images can be downloaded.

Voice settings

Voice guidance etc. can be set.
Touch "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.





1 Select voice guidance volume

2 Voice guidance on/off during route guidance

3 Voice guidance on/off during audio system is in use

4 Voice recognition prompt on/off

This setting can also be changed on the "Shortcut Menu" screen. (→P. 431)

5 Restore default settings

6 Voice commands on/off when using the audio/video and air conditioning systems

7 Voice guidance on/off when using the traffic information

8 Voice guidance on/off when using the XM NavWeather™

Touch "Save" after changing settings.

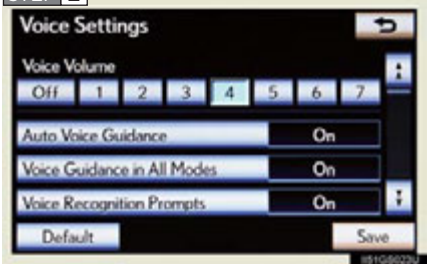
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Voice volume

The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off.

STEP 1 Touch "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 2



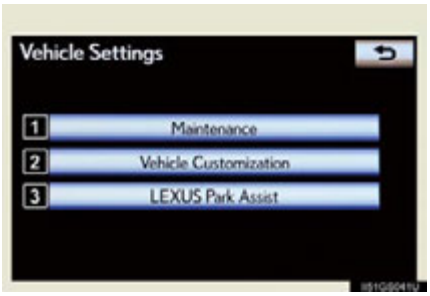
Select the desired level by touching the appropriate number.

If voice guidance is not needed, touch "Off" to disable the feature.

STEP 3 Touch "Save".

Vehicle settings

Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.



1 Maintenance information settings

Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

2 Vehicle customization

Detailed information: →P. 912

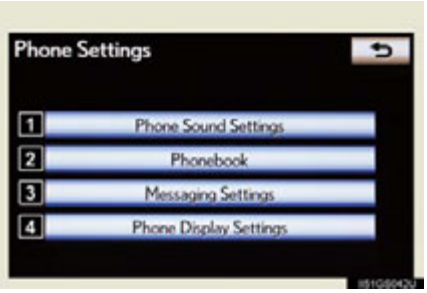
3 Setting up intuitive parking assist

Detailed information: →P. 251

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Phone settings

Touch “Phone” on the “Setup” screen.



1 Phone sound settings

Detailed information: →P. 648

2 Phonebook settings

Detailed information: →P. 650

3 Message settings

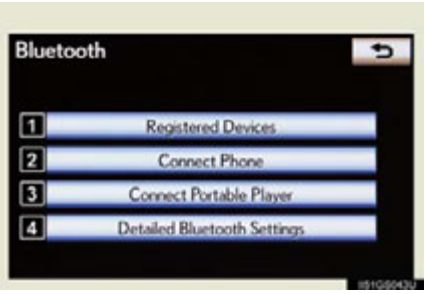
Detailed information: →P. 666

4 Phone display settings

Detailed information: →P. 670

Bluetooth® Settings

Touch “Bluetooth*” on the “Setup” screen.



1 Registered devices

Detailed information: →P. 674

2 Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

Detailed information: →P. 680

3 Selecting portable player

Detailed information: →P. 681

4 Detailed Bluetooth® settings

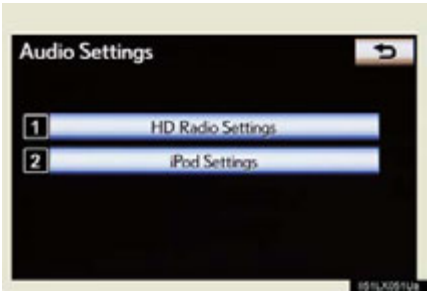
Detailed information: →P. 682

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio settings

Touch “Audio” on the “Setup” screen.



1 HD Radio™ system settings

Detailed information: →P. 492

2 iPod settings

Detailed information: →P. 563

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information screen

"Information" screen can be used to display the fuel consumption, XM satellite system, etc.
Press the "INFO" button to display the "Information" screen.



Switch	Page
"Fuel Consumption"	P. 430
"Apps", "Traffic Incidents", "Map Data", "LEXUS Insider", "XM Fuel Prices", "XM NavWeather", "XM Stocks", "XM Sports"	Navigation System Owner's Manual

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel consumption



1 Resetting the past record data
2 Best recorded fuel economy
3 Current fuel economy
4 Previous fuel economy record

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Resetting the data

The data can be deleted by touching "Clear".

Updating the past record data

When the average fuel consumption is being displayed on the multi-information display, update the average fuel consumption by pressing and hold the "DISP" switch on the steering wheel to measure the current fuel consumption again.

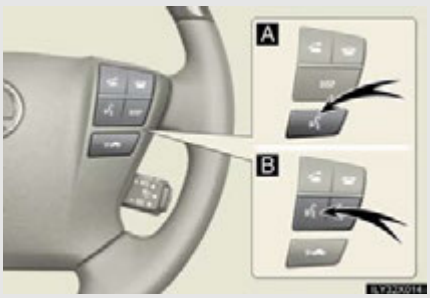
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice command system

The voice command system enables the navigation, audio/video, hands-free and air conditioning systems to be operated using voice commands.

For details of the navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

■ Talk switch



Press or .

To cancel, press and hold or .

■ Microphone



Voice command system operation

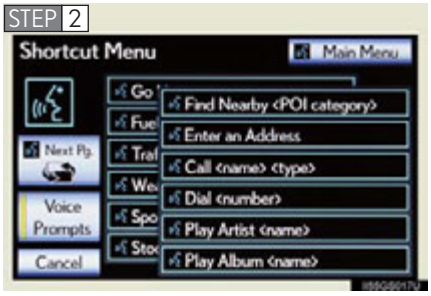
■ Voice command system operation

STEP 1 Press or .

After the "Shortcut Menu" screen has been displayed, voice guidance will commence.

Voice guidance for the voice command system can be skipped by pressing or .

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



After a beep sounds, say the command of your choice.

Voice commands are marked with .

Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen.

If you wish to display the commands displayed on the page in the background, perform one of the following:

- Say “Next page” or “Previous page”.
- Touch “Next Pg.” or “Prev. Pg.”

If you wish to display the “Main Menu” screen when the “Shortcut Menu” screen is displayed, perform one of the following:

- Say “Main menu”.
- Touch “Main Menu”.

To cancel, touch “Cancel”, or press and hold or .

Saying “Help” prompts voice guidance to offer examples of commands and operation methods.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3



Say the command displayed on the screen.

If a desired outcome is not shown, or if no selections are available, perform one of the following to return to the previous screen:

- Say "Go back".
- Touch "Go Back".

To cancel, touch "Cancel", or press and hold or .

Voice command example (search for a track using artist name or album name)

STEP 1 Press or .

"Play Artist <name>" and "Play Album <name>" are displayed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Say "Play artist <name>" or "Play album <name>".

Say the desired artist name or album name in the place of the "<>".

A confirmation screen will be displayed showing the recognition results. If multiple matching items are found, a selection screen will be displayed.

When "Play Artist <name>" is used to play music, the first track is selected randomly. (→P. 437)

STEP 3



Say "Yes" or touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Natural speech information (English only)

Due to natural language speech recognition technology, this system enables recognition of a command when spoken naturally. However, the system cannot recognize every variation of each command. In some situations, it is possible to omit the command for the procedure and directly state the desired operation. Not all voice commands are displayed in the short cut menu.

Expression examples for each function

Command	Expression examples
"Call <name> <type>"	Get me <Robert Brown>. I need to call <Robert Brown> at <Work> right away.
"Dial <number>"	Please dial the number <3334445555>. Ring <3334445555>.
"Play Artist <name>"	Play the artist <XXXXX>. I'd like to hear the band <XXXXX>.*
"Play Album <name>"	Play album <XXXXX>. Music from album <XXXXX>.*

*: Say the desired artist name or album name in the place of the "<>".

Commands that are not displayed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen can be accessed from the main menu.

For example, to make an "International Call", say "Main menu" while the "Shortcut Menu" screen is being displayed. Then say "Use the phone" followed by saying the desired number, e.g. "123456789".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Expanded voice commands

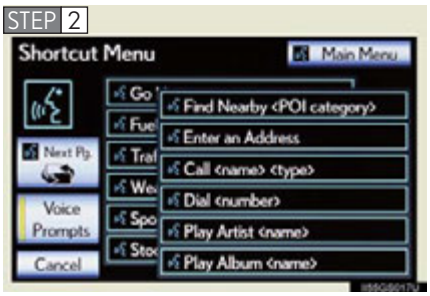
Touching "On" next to "Expanded Voice Commands" on the "Voice Settings" screen enables voice command operation of the audio/video and air conditioning system. (→P. 425)

For more information on operations that can be controlled using expanded voice commands, refer to "Command list".

■ Voice command example (turn the audio system)

STEP 1 Press  or  .

STEP 2



Say "Audio on".

Command list

Recognizable voice commands and their actions are shown below.

- For devices that are not installed in the vehicle, the related commands will not be displayed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen. Also, according to conditions, other commands may not be displayed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen.
- Voice recognition language can be changed. (→P. 417)
- Commands that have a "O" in the Shortcut Menu column can be recognized from the "Shortcut Menu" screen.
  Commands that have a "—" in the Shortcut Menu column can only be recognized from the screen that they are displayed in.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Calling a phone (→P. 635)**

Command	Action	Shortcut Menu
"Call <name> <type>"	Calls made by saying a name from the phonebook. For example: Say "Call John Smith", "Call John Smith, mobile" etc.	O
"Dial <number>"	Calls made by saying the phone number. For example: Say "Dial 911", "Dial 5556667777" etc.	O
"International Call"*1	Calls international numbers by saying the phone number.	–

*1: To use this function, say "Main menu" and then "Use the phone" while the "Shortcut Menu" screen is being displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a music

Command	Action	Shortcut Menu
"Play Artist <name>"	Plays tracks by the selected artist. For example: Say "Play artist <XXXXX>"*1	○
"Play Album <name>"	Plays tracks from the selected album. For example: Say "Play album <XXXXX>"*1	○
"Play Song <name>"*2	Plays the selected track. For example: Say "Play song Summertime", "Play song Concerto in A Major" etc.	–
"Play Playlist <name>"*2	Plays tracks from the selected playlist. For example: Say "Play playlist My Favorite Songs", "Play Playlist Classic Hits" etc.	–

*1: Say the desired artist name or album name in the place of the "<>".

*2: To use this function, say "Main menu" and then "Play music" while the "Shortcut Menu" screen is being displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Select audio mode**

When expanded voice commands are turned "On". (→P. 435)

Command	Action	Shortcut Menu
"Radio"	Sets the audio mode to radio.	O
"AM"	Selects the AM band.	O
"FM"	Selects the FM band.	O
"Satellite radio"	Selects the satellite radio mode.	O
"Disc"	Selects the disc audio mode.	O
"Auxiliary"	Selects the auxiliary audio mode.	O
"Bluetooth* audio"	Selects the Bluetooth® audio mode.	O
"iPod"	Selects the iPod audio mode.	O
"USB audio"	Selects the USB audio mode.	O
"Audio on"	Turns the audio system on.	O
"Audio off"	Turns the audio system off.	O

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Air conditioning system command**

When expanded voice commands are turned "On". (→P. 435)

Command	Action	Shortcut Menu
"Automatic climate control"	Turns air conditioning system on and off.	○
"Warmer"	Turns temperature up.	○
"Cooler"	Turns temperature down.	○

■ **Voice command system**

- Commands that are not displayed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen can be operated from the "Main Menu" screen.
- If the system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, press  or  and try again.
- Voice guidance can be canceled by setting voice prompts to off. Use this setting when it is desirable to say a command immediately after pressing  or  and hearing a beep.

■ **If a voice command cannot be recognized**

- If a voice command cannot be recognized within 6 seconds, voice guidance will say "Pardon?" ("Command not recognized." will be displayed on the screen) and voice command reception will restart.
- If a voice command cannot be recognized 2 consecutive times, the voice command guidance system will say "Paused. To restart voice recognition, push the talk switch. To cancel voice recognition, push and hold the talk switch.". Then voice recognition will be suspended.

■ **When touching "Voice Prompts"**

- The voice recognition prompt can be set to on or off. This setting can also be changed on the "Voice Settings" screen. (→P. 425)
- Voice recognition will be temporarily suspended. Press  or  again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When using the microphone**

- It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.
- Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.
- Voice commands may not be recognized if:
  - Spoken too quickly.
  - Spoken at a low or high volume.
  - The roof or windows are open.
  - Passengers are talking while voice commands are spoken.
  - The air conditioning speed is set high.
  - The air conditioning vents are turned towards the microphone.
- In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly and using voice commands may not be possible:
  - The command is incorrect or unclear. Note that certain words, accents or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.
  - There is excessive background noise, such as wind noise.

■ **When searching for a track**

- A USB memory or iPod must be connected to enable track searching and playback. (→P. 552, 562)
- When a USB memory or iPod is connected, recognition data is created so tracks can be searched using voice commands.
- Recognition data is updated under the following conditions:
  - When the USB memory or iPod data has changed.
  - When the voice recognition language is changed. (→P. 417)
- While the recognition data is being created or being updated, a track search cannot be performed using a voice command.
- While "Play Music" is displayed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen, say "Play music" to display the music screen from which searching for a track using a voice command can be performed.
- When "Play Music" is dimmed in the "Shortcut Menu" screen, it is not possible to search for a track using a voice command. In this situation, reduce the amount of music data in the USB memory or iPod and update the recognition data to enable searching by voice command.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Natural speech information**

- The "Use the Phone" and "Play Music" commands displayed on the "Shortcut Menu" screen can be operated using natural language speech recognition technology.
- If the command cannot be recognized completely, the command input screen will be displayed. (Search results will be shown based on the part of the command that was recognized.)

■ **When turning the audio or air conditioning system on**

- Commands relating to operation of the audio/video and air conditioning systems can only be performed when the audio/video and air conditioning systems are turned on.
- Expanded voice commands can be recognized when the "Shortcut Menu" screen is displayed.

■ **The Gracenote® media database**

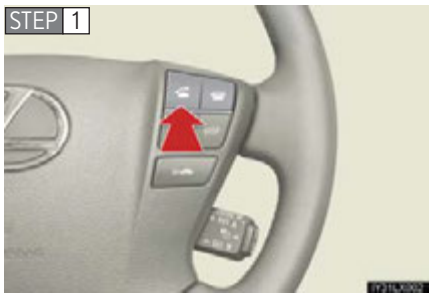
Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mobile Assistant

The Mobile Assistant feature on this system allows the activation of Apple's Siri® Eyes Free mode via the steering wheel switches. To operate the Mobile Assistant, a compatible cellular phone must be registered and connected to this system via Bluetooth®. (→P. 625)
For details of the navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

STEP 1



Press and hold the off hook switch until you hear the beeps that indicate the system is listening.

STEP 2



The Mobile Assistant can be used only when the neighboring screen is displayed.

To cancel the Mobile Assistant, touch "Cancel", or press and hold the off hook switch.

To restart the Mobile Assistant for additional commands, press the off hook switch. Mobile Assistant can only be restarted after the system responds to a voice command. After some phone and music commands, the Mobile Assistant feature will automatically end to complete the requested action.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Adjusting the volume**

The volume of the Mobile Assistant can be adjusted using the "PWR/VOL" knob or steering wheel volume switches. The Mobile Assistant and phone call volumes are synchronized.

■ **Microphone**



It is not necessary to speak directly into the microphone when using the Mobile Assistant.

- Wait for the listening beeps before using the Mobile Assistant.
- The Mobile Assistant may not recognize commands in the following situations:
  - When spoken too quickly.
  - When spoken at a low or high volume.
  - When the roof or windows are open.
  - When passengers are talking while the Mobile Assistant is being used.
  - When the air conditioning system's fan speed is set high.
  - When the air conditioning vents are turned toward the microphone.

■ **Mobile Assistant precautions**

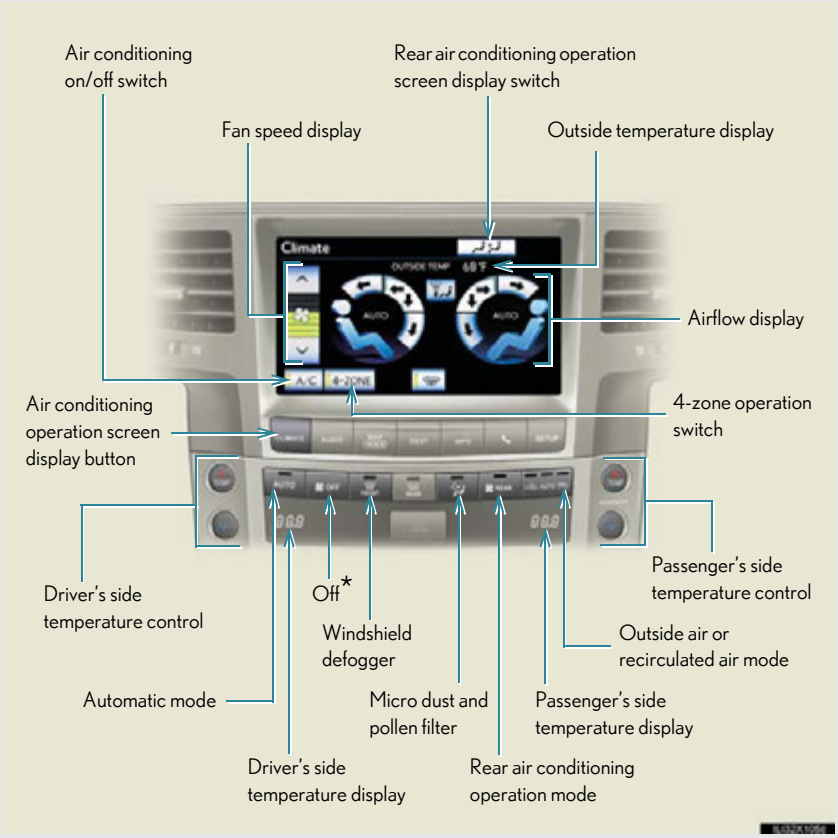
- The available features and functions may vary based on the iOS version installed on the connected device.
- Some Siri features are limited in Eyes Free mode. If you attempt to use an unavailable function, Siri will inform you that the function is not available.
- If Siri is not enabled on the cellular phone connected via Bluetooth®, an error message will be displayed on the screen.
- While a phone call is active, the Mobile Assistant cannot be used.
- If using the navigation feature of the cellular phone, ensure the active audio source is Bluetooth® audio or iPod in order to hear turn by turn direction prompts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

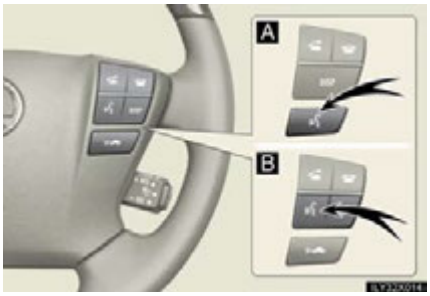
Press the "CLIMATE" button to display the air conditioning operation screen.



*: The front air conditioning system cannot be switched off while the cool box is on. (→P. 699)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the voice command system



Press  or  to operate the voice command system. (→P. 431/"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

A Without dynamic radar cruise control

B With dynamic radar cruise control

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press the "AUTO" button.

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

"AUTO" will be displayed on the touch screen.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➡ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver's and front passenger's seats can be set separately.

Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated are maintained.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the settings

Adjusting the temperature setting

Press 

to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is touched.

Individual mode (the indicator on "4-ZONE" is on.): The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 457) can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side or rear temperature control will enter individual mode.

Simultaneous mode (the indicator on "4-ZONE" is off.): Only 

or  (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

Adjusting the fan speed

Touch "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on the screen.

Press 

to turn the fan off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the air outlets



Touch any mode on the operation screen.

1 Left-hand front seat

2 Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the left-hand and right-hand front seats can be chosen.



Air flows to the upper body.

*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.

*2: Only in the automatic mode



Air flows to the upper body and feet.

*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Air flows to the feet.

*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press AUTO.

The mode switches between (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

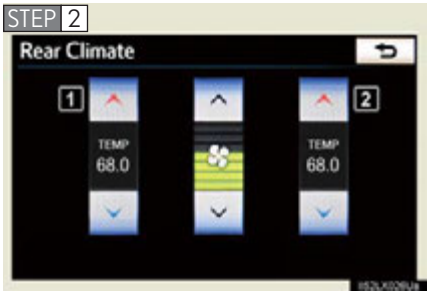
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the rear seat settings from the front seat

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

STEP 1 Touch .

STEP 2



Touch "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on the screen. Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

1 Left-hand rear seat

2 Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is touched.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

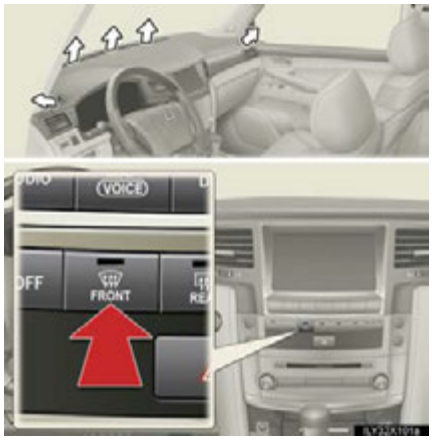
STEP 1 Touch on the screen or press REAR.

STEP 2 Touch "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on the screen.

Press REAR to turn the fan off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Defogging the windshield



Press  .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

Micro dust and pollen filter



Press  .

Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

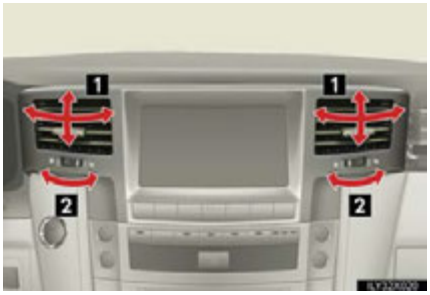
Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

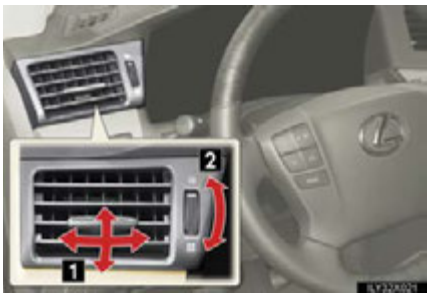
Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Front side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Using the automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- Immediately after the "AUTO" button is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ **When the outside temperature exceeds 75°F (24°C) and the air conditioning system is on**

- In order to reduce the air conditioning power consumption, the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically. This may also reduce fuel consumption.
- Recirculated air mode is selected as a default mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- It is possible to switch to outside air mode at any time by pressing 

.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.
When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

■ **When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)**

The air conditioning system may not operate even when "A/C" is touched.

■ **Micro dust and pollen filter**

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur.
  - Outside air mode does not switch to recirculated air mode.
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press  .

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in "AUTO" mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 781

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. exhaust gas sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

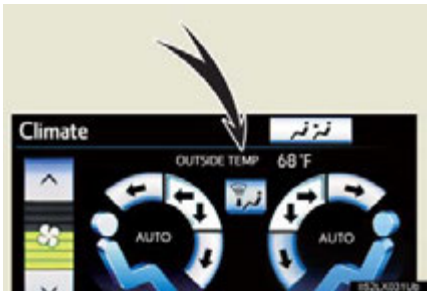
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside temperature display

Outside temperature is displayed in the screen.
The displayed temperature ranges from -40°F (-40°C) up to 122°F (50°C).



■ **The outside temperature is displayed when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When "– –" or "E" is displayed**

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer

■ **Display**

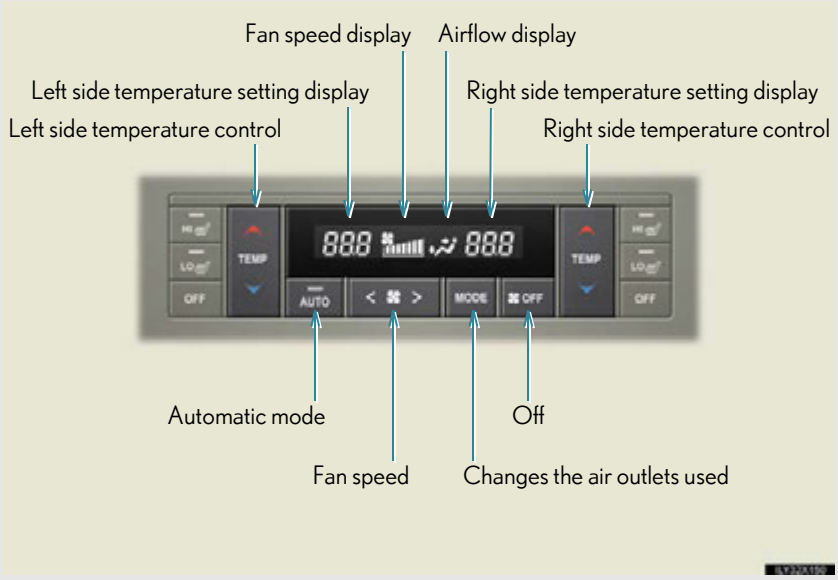
In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press the "AUTO" button.

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press "∧" on the "TEMP" button to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be set separately.

■ Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated are maintained.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press "∧" on the "TEMP" button to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be set separately.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press ">" (increase) or "<" (decrease) on < ❋ >.

The fan speed is shown on the display. (7 levels)

Press OFF to turn the fan off.

■ Changing the air outlets

Press the "MODE" button.

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Air flows to the upper body.



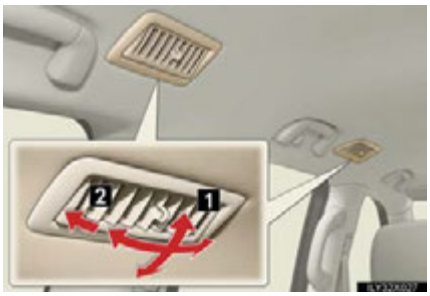
Air flows to the upper body and feet.



Air flows to the feet.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob fully to the back of the vehicle to close the vent.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defog-

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.



On/off

The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

■ **The rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield wiper de-icer

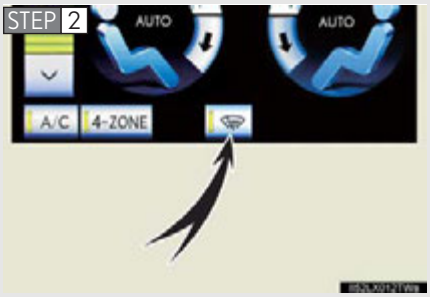
This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

STEP 1



Press the "CLIMATE" button.

STEP 2



On/off

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

■ The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio system type

CD and DVD player with AM/FM radio

Press the “AUDIO” button and touch each tab to display the audio control screen.

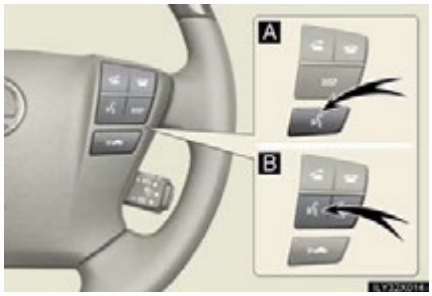


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 487
Using the CD/DVD player	P. 507
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs	P. 509
Playing DVD video	P. 515
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 529
Listening to Bluetooth® audio	P. 541
Listening to a USB memory	P. 552
Listening to an iPod	P. 562
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 572
Using the AUX port	P. 574
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 576

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the voice command system



Press  or  to operate the voice command system. (→P. 431/"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

A Without dynamic radar cruise control

B With dynamic radar cruise control

Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

When using the touch screen

Dimmed screen buttons cannot be operated.

Tab

Touch  or  , located either side of the screen tabs, to display tabs from the previous or next page.

About Dolby

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ **For vehicles sold in U.S.A. and Canada**

● Part 15 of the FCC Rules

FCC Warning:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

● Laser products

- USE OF CONTROL OR ADJUSTMENT OR PERFORMANCE OF PROCEDURES OTHER THAN THOSE SPECIFIED HEREIN MAY RESULT IN HAZARDOUS RADIATION EXPOSURE.
- THE USE OF OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS WITH THIS PRODUCT WILL INCREASE EYE HAZARD.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

■ **To avoid damaging the audio system**

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Open source license

This product uses the following open source software.

● T-Kernel

This Product uses the Source Code of T-Kernel under T-License granted by the T-Engine Forum (www.t-engine.org).

● C Library

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors. This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.

Copyright © 1982, 1985, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1983, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Copyright © 1987, 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1987, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1988 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1988 University of Utah.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by the Systems Programming Group of the University of Utah Computer Science Department and Ralph Campbell.

Copyright © 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Arthur David Olson of the National Cancer Institute.

Copyright © 1989 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1989 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Chris Torek.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Copyright © 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1991, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Berkeley Software Design, Inc.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Ralph Campbell.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

© UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. All or some portions of this file are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This software was developed by the Computer Systems Engineering group at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory under DARPA contract BG 91-66 and contributed to Berkeley. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.

Copyright © 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Ralph Campbell. This file is derived from the MIPS RISC Architecture book by Gerry Kane.

Copyright © 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Andrew Hume of AT&T Bell Laboratories.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1982, 1986 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ""AS IS"" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.

Copyright © 1996 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by J.T. Conklin.

Copyright © 1997 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 1997, 1998 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1997,98 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by J.T. Conklin.

Copyright © 1997, 1998 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code was contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 1998 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 1998, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus J. Klein.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Copyright © 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Julian Coleman.

Copyright © 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Dieter Baron and Thomas Klausner.

Copyright © 2000, 2001 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Jun-ichiro itojun Hagino and by Klaus Klein.

Copyright © 2001 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Klaus Klein.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.

Copyright © 1997 Christos Zoulas. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.

Copyright © 1994 Winning Strategies, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998 WIDE Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE PROJECT AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PROJECT OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Copyright ©1999 Citrus Project, All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1995 Carnegie-Mellon University. All rights reserved. Author: Chris G. Demetriou

Copyright © 1995, 1996 Carnegie-Mellon University. All rights reserved. Author: Chris G. Demetriou

Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation is hereby granted, provided that both the copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software, derivative works or modified versions, and any portions thereof, and that both notices appear in supporting documentation.

CARNEGIE MELLON ALLOWS FREE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE IN ITS ""AS IS"" CONDITION. CARNEGIE MELLON DISCLAIMS ANY LIABILITY OF ANY KIND FOR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Carnegie Mellon requests users of this software to return to Software Distribution Coordinator or Software.Distribution@CS.CMU.EDU School of Computer Science Carnegie Mellon University Pittsburgh PA 15213-3890 any improvements or extensions that they make and grant Carnegie the rights to redistribute these changes.

● TCP/IP, Socket Library

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

Copyright © 1980, 1983, 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1987, 1989 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1983, 1989, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1985, 1988, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1985, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 1989, 1993, 1995 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 2004 by Internet Systems Consortium, Inc. (""ISC"") Portions Copyright © 1996-1999 by Internet Software Consortium. Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ""AS IS"" AND ISC DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL ISC BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Portions Copyright © 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ""AS IS"" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

This product includes software developed by WIDE Project and its contributors.

Portions Copyright © 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998 WIDE Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by WIDE Project and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of the project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE PROJECT AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PROJECT OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1988 Stephen Deering.

Copyright © 1982, 1986 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. [rescinded 22 July 1999]
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1982, 1986, 1988 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms are permitted provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph are duplicated in all such forms and that any documentation and other materials related to such distribution and use acknowledge that the software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ""AS IS"" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTIBILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Rights, responsibilities and use of this software are controlled by the agreement found in the ""LICENSE.H"" file distributed with this source code. ""LICENSE.H"" may not be removed from this distribution, modified, enhanced nor references to it omitted.

Copyright 1983 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Copyright 1984 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Copyright 1984, 1985 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Copyright 1990 by NetPort Software

Copyright 1990-1993 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1990-1994 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1990-1996 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1990-1997 by NetPort Software.

Copyright 1993 by NetPort Software

Copyright 1986 by Carnegie Mellon

All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission.

● OpenSSL

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/) This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

OpenSSL License

Copyright © 1998-2008 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)"

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.
5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Original SSLeay License

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL. This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com). Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).
4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

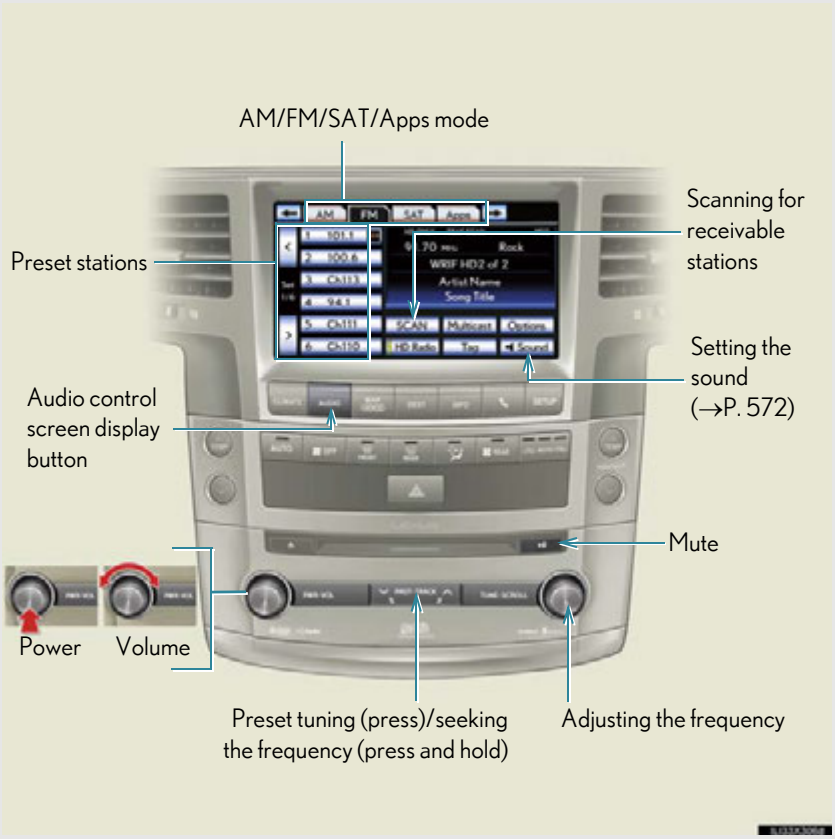
The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the radio

Press the "AUDIO" button to display the radio control screen.

Touch the "AM", "FM", "SAT" or "Apps" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly to select the desired tab.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting a station (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

■ Seek tuning

Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

■ Manual tuning

Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob.

■ Preset stations

Touch the desired preset stations (1 - 6).

Change the page by using "<" or ">" on the screen.

Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

Setting station presets (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

STEP 1 Search for desired stations.

STEP 2



Touch one of the left side screen buttons (1-6) and hold it until a beep is heard. There are 6 sets of 6 presets. There is a total of 36 presets.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Touch “SCAN” on the screen.

“SCAN” appears on the screen.

The radio will find the next station and stay there for 10 seconds if “All” or “HD Only” is selected, or 5 seconds if “Analog” is selected, and then scan again. (→P. 492)

STEP 2 Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired station is reached.

RBDS (Radio Broadcast Data Systems)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RBDS broadcasts

STEP 1



Touch “Options” on the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 2



Touch "< TYPE" or "TYPE >" on the screen.

The program list changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

- Classical
- Country
- EasyLis (Easy Listening)
- Inform (Information)
- Jazz
- News
- Oldies
- Other
- Pop Music
- Religion
- Rock
- R&B (Rhythm and Blues)
- Sports
- Talk
- Traffic (Not available when "HD Radio Settings" are set to analog.)
- Alert (Emergency Alert)

When a program is set, "TYPE SEEK" appears.

STEP 3 Touch "TYPE SEEK" on the screen.

The radio seeks for stations by the relevant program type.
If no relevant program can be found, "no type" appears on the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Traffic announcement



Touch "Traffic" on the screen.

"TRAF SEEK" appears on the display, and the radio seeks a traffic program station.

If no traffic program station is found, "No Traffic" appears on the display.

HD Radio™ Technology

HD Radio™ Technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your radio product has a special receiver which allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts it already receives.

Digital broadcasts have better sound quality than analog broadcasts as digital broadcasts provide free, crystal clear audio with no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available radio stations and programming, refer to www.hdradio.com.

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ HD Radio™ system settings

HD Radio™ system can be set using the procedure outlined below.

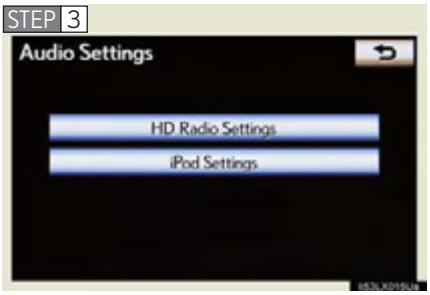
STEP 1 Press the “SETUP” button.

STEP 2



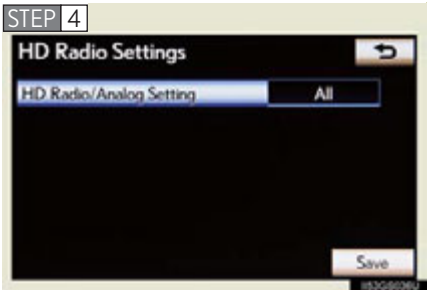
Touch “Audio”.

STEP 3



Touch “HD Radio Settings”.

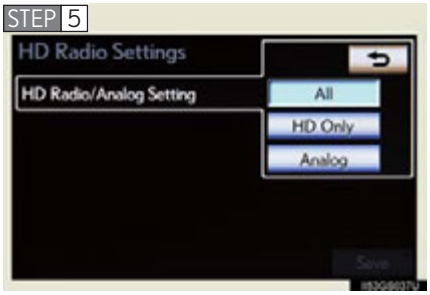
STEP 4



Touch “HD Radio/Analog Setting”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5



Touch the item to be set.

"All": Touch to receive both analog and digital broadcasts.

"HD Only": Touch to receive only digital broadcasts.

"Analog": Touch to receive only analog broadcasts.

STEP 6 Touch "Save".

■ Using HD Radio™ Technology

STEP 1 Press the "AUDIO" button.

STEP 2



Touch the "AM" or "FM" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly to select the desired tab.

An orange "HD)" logo indicator will be displayed on the screen when in digital.

The song title, artist name and music genre will appear on the screen when available by the radio station.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3



Touch "Options" to display this screen.

When "Text" is touched, information such as the artist name, song title, album title and music genre of the track being listened to are displayed on the text screen. To display messages from the station, touch "Additional Information".

When "< TYPE" or "TYPE >" is touched, a program type will be searched. Once a program type has been set, "TYPE SEEK" will appear on the screen. (→P. 489)

■ Changing the multiple or supplemental programs

On the FM radio frequency most digital stations have "multiple" or supplemental programs on one FM station.



Touch "Multicast".

Each time "Multicast" is touched, the supplemental program changes.

If "Multicast" is touched when tuned to the last of the supplemental programs, the main program will be returned to.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Preserving tag information

Tag information in the music broadcasting is preserved in the system and transmits to an iPod.

STEP 1



Touch "Tag" to bookmark the music information.

STEP 2 Press the lid, open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable. (→P. 563)

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

Once an iPod is connected, the music tag moves from the radio into the iPod.

When the iPod is connected to iTunes, the "tagged" information of the songs which were tagged while listening to the radio can be viewed. Then a user may decide to purchase the song or CD/Album which had been listened to on their radio.

If tagging the music information fails, "Saving the HD Radio tag failed." will be displayed on the screen. If this occurs, tag the information again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

HD Radio™ Technology troubleshooting guide

Experience	Cause	Action
Mismatch of time alignment- a user may hear a short period of programming replayed or an echo, stutter or skip.	The radio stations analog and digital volume are not properly aligned or the station is in ballgame mode.	None, radio broadcast issue. A user can contact the radio station.
Sound fades, blending in and out.	Radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	Reception issue, may clear-up as the vehicle continues to be driven. Touching "Analog" can force radio in an analog audio.
Audio mute condition when an HD2/HD3 multicast channel had been playing.	The radio does not have access to digital signals at the moment.	This is normal behavior, wait until the digital signal returns. If out of the coverage area, seek a new station.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Experience	Cause	Action
Audio mute delay when selecting an HD2/HD3 multicast channel preset.	The digital multicast content is not available until HD Radio™ broadcast can be decoded and make the audio available. This takes up to 7 seconds.	This is normal behavior, wait for the audio to become available.
Text information does not match the present song audio.	Data service issue at the radio broadcaster.	Broadcaster should be notified. Complete the form: www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences.
No text information shown for the present selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Broadcaster should be notified. Complete the form: www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

XM® Satellite Radio

■ Receiving XM® Satellite Radio

STEP 1 Press the "AUDIO" button.

STEP 2



Touch the "SAT" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "SAT" tab is selected to choose a satellite broadcast channel.

STEP 3 Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the next or previous channel.

Turning the knob quickly allows rapid scrolling through the channel list.

■ Presetting XM® Satellite Radio channels

STEP 1 Select the desired channel.

STEP 2



Touch one of the left side screen buttons (1-6) and hold it until a beep is heard.

To change the preset channel to a different one, follow the same procedure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing the channel category



Touch either "< TYPE" or "TYPE >" to go to the next or previous category.

■ Seeking the channel within the current category

Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

■ Scanning XM® Satellite Radio channels

Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.
"SCAN" appears on the screen.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired channel is reached.

■ Displaying the title and artist name



Touch "Text" to display the song title and artist name currently being listening to.

Up to 64 alphanumeric characters can be displayed. (Some information will not be fully displayed.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Internet radio broadcast (vehicles with the navigation system)

One of Apps' features is the ability to listen to internet radio. In order to use this service, an Apps compatible phone and the navigation system need to be set. For details, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

STEP 1 Press the "AUDIO" button.

STEP 2



Touch the "Apps" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "Apps" tab is selected.

If a compatible phone is already registered, it will be connected automatically.

If a compatible phone has not been registered or the Bluetooth® connection cannot be completed correctly, touch "Connect" to register and/or connect your phone. (→P. 674)

When connection is complete, the application screen can be displayed.

STEP 3 Touch "View Application Screen" on the screen.

The internet radio application screen is displayed.

Perform operations according to the displayed application screen.

By pressing the "AUDIO" button, the "Audio" screen can be returned to.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Silencing the sound

Press .

Press the button again to turn the system back on.

■ **If you touch**

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Cargo loaded on the roof luggage carrier, especially metal objects, may adversely affect the reception of XM® Satellite Radio.
- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear quarter window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear quarter window.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ XM Radio Services — Descriptions

● Radio and Entertainment

XM offers more than 170 satellite radio channels of commercial-free music and premier sports, news, talk, and entertainment. XM is broadcast via satellites to millions of listeners across the continental United States. XM subscribers listen to XM on satellite radio receivers for the car, home, and portable use. More information about XM is available online at www.siriusxm.com (U.S.A.) or www.xmradio.ca (Canada).

● Infotainment and Data services

XM offers a variety of advanced Infotainment and data services.

■ XM Radio Services — Subscription Instructions

For XM Services requiring a subscription (such as XM Radio, and some Infotainment & data services), the following paragraph shall be included.

Required XM Radio and some Infotainment & data services monthly subscriptions sold separately after trial period. Subscription fee is consumer only. All fees and programming subject to change. Subscriptions are subject to the Customer Agreement available at www.siriusxm.com (U.S.A.) or www.xmradio.ca (Canada). XM service only available in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. © 2011 Sirius XM Radio Inc. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. All other marks, channel names and logos are the property of their respective owners.

For more information, program schedules, and to subscribe or extend subscription after complimentary trial period; more information is available at:

▶ U.S.A. Customers:
Visit www.siriusxm.com or call 1-877-515-3987

▶ Canadian Customers:
Visit www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

XM Radio Services — Legal Disclaimers and Warnings

Fees and Taxes — Subscription fee, taxes, one time activation fee, and other fees may apply. Subscription fee is consumer only. All fees and programming subject to change. Subscriptions subject to Customer Agreement available at www.siriusxm.com (U.S.A.) or www.xmradio.ca (Canada). XM service only available in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada*.

*: Canada — some deterioration of service may occur in extreme northern latitudes. This is beyond the control of XM Satellite Radio.

Explicit Language Notice — Channels with frequent explicit language are indicated with an "XL" preceding the channel name. Channel blocking is available for XM Satellite Radio receivers by notifying XM at;

▶ U.S.A. Customers:
Visit.www.siriusxm.com or calling 1-877-515-3987

▶ Canadian Customers:
Visit www.xmradio.ca or calling 1-877-438-9677

It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate, or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the XM Satellite Radio System or that support the XM website, the Online Service or any of its content. Furthermore, the AMBE® voice compression software included in this product is protected by intellectual property rights including patent rights, copyrights, and trade secrets of Digital Voice Systems, Inc.

Note: this applies to XM receivers only and not XM Ready devices.

Receiving XM® Satellite Radio

Radio ID
You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or reporting a problem. If "CH 000" is selected using the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob, the ID code, which is 8 alphanumeric characters, will be displayed. If another channel is selected, the ID code will no longer be displayed. The channel (000) alternates between displaying the radio ID and the specific radio code.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the satellite radio does not operate normally**

If a problem occurs with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the screen. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

Ck Antenna	The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
Ch Unauth	You have not subscribed to XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose "CH 000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH 001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. To listen to the premium channel, contact XM® Satellite Radio.
No Signal	The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
Loading	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
Ch Off Air	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action is required.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ch Unavail	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or “CH 001”. If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987 (U.S.A.) or 1-877-438-9677 (Canada).

■ **About internet radio (vehicles with the navigation system)**

- Other applications can be activated while listening to internet radio.
- An iPhone cannot be connected via Bluetooth® and USB connection at the same time. However, it is possible to recharge an iPhone while using Apps by connecting via USB. The system uses the connection method that was used last. Therefore, if connected via USB after Bluetooth® connection, it is necessary to reconnect the iPhone via Bluetooth®.
- Services requiring a separate contract can also be used. For details, refer to http://www.lexus.com/enform/ or call 1-800-255-3987.
- If internet radio has never been listened to by activating “Apps” from the “Information” screen, the “Apps” tab will be dimmed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Certifications for XM® Satellite Radio

This device complies with RSS-310 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the condition that this device does not cause harmful interference.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Cet appareil est conforme au CNR-310 d'Industrie Canada. Son exploitation est autorisée sous réserve que l'appareil ne cause pas de brouillage préjudiciable.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the CD/DVD player

Press the "AUDIO" button if a disc has already been loaded in the disc slot. Touch the "DISC" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "DISC" tab is selected.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inserting a disc

Insert a disc into the disc slot.

Ejecting a disc

Press  and remove the disc.

Playing and pausing a track/file/chapter

To play or pause a track/file/chapter, press  .

Using the display

- Under extremely cold conditions, the screen may react slowly or operation sound may become louder.
- If a disc is inserted with the label facing down, it cannot be played.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs

Press the "AUDIO" button if a disc has already been loaded in the disc slot. Touch the "DISC" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "DISC" tab is selected.

■ Control icon screen

▶ Audio CD mode



1 Random playback
2 Repeat play
3 Pause
Touch ▶ to play
4 Setting the sound (→P. 572)
5 Selecting a folder

▶ MP3/WMA mode



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a track (Audio CD)

■ Selecting a track

Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button or turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired track number.

■ Selecting a track from the track list

STEP 1 Touch the track name on the screen to display the CD's track list.

STEP 2



Touch the desired track number.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 track groups.

"PRST•TRACK" button: Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to scroll through the track list one by one.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting a folder (MP3/WMA discs)

■ Selecting a folder

Touch ">" or "<" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

STEP 1 Touch the folder name on the screen to display the following folder list screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number to display the folder's file list. From the file list, select the desired file number.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 folder groups.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the folder list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a file (MP3/WMA discs)

■ Selecting a file

Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button or turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob to select the desired file number.

■ Selecting a file from the file list

STEP 1 Touch the file name on the screen to display the following file list screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired file number.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 file groups.

"PRST•TRACK" button: Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to scroll through the file list one by one.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the file list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a file

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Random playback

▶ Audio CD

Touch “RAND” on the screen.

“RAND” appears on the screen.
To cancel, touch “RAND” again.

▶ MP3/WMA disc

■ **Playing files from a particular folder in random order**

Each time “RAND” is touched, the mode changes as follows:
random (1 folder random) → folder random (1 disc random) → off

■ **Playing all the files on a disc in random order**

Touch “RAND” repeatedly until “FLD.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RAND” again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, touch “RAND” to reset.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Repeat play

▶ Audio CD

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

“RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RPT” again.

▶ MP3/WMA disc

Repeating a file

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

Each time is “RPT” touched, the mode changes as follows:

- When “RAND” is off
  file repeat → folder repeat → off
- When “RAND” is on
  file repeat → repeat off

Repeating all of the files in a folder

Touch “RPT” repeatedly until “FLD.RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RPT” again.

If you touch 

The display returns to the previous screen.

Displaying the title and artist name (Audio CD)

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 characters can be displayed.

Error messages

→P. 529

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing DVD video

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While driving in DVD video mode, only the DVD's audio can be heard.

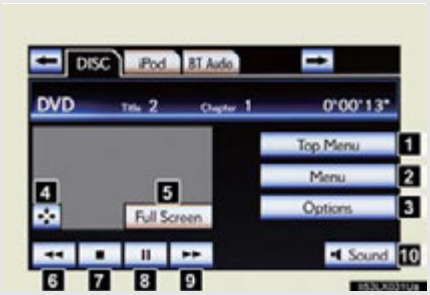
When a DVD video disc is inserted while driving, the audio contents of the main feature will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played from the main story.

Press the "AUDIO" button if a disc has already been loaded in the disc slot.

Touch the "DISC" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "DISC" tab is selected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Control icon screen



1 2 Menu screen appears

3 Option screen appears (→P. 517)

4 Display menu control key (→P. 518)

5 Vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns

6 Rewind

7 Stop

8 Pause
Touch ▶ to play

9 Fast forward

10 Setting the sound (→P. 572)

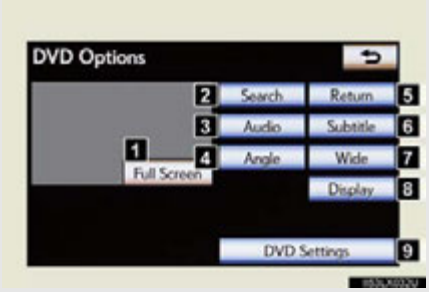
If is touched, while watching a DVD, the DVD controls will appear.

If appears on the screen when a control is touched the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DVD options screen

Touch "Options" on "DVD" screen, the following screen appears.



1. Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)
2. Search by title number
3. Change audio language
4. Change angle
5. Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
6. Change subtitle language
7. Change screen size
8. Display the image quality adjustment screen
9. Change initial setting

If appears on the screen when a control is touched the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

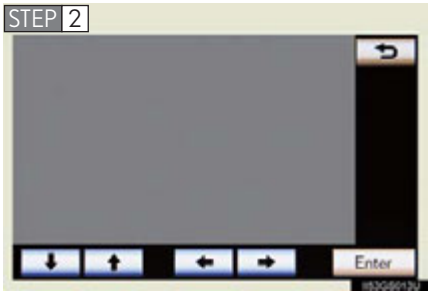
Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen.

Using the DVD menu

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" or "Top Menu" on the control icon screen.
Touch ✣ if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

STEP 2



Select the menu item using ↓, ↑, ← or → and touch "Enter".

Touch any point on the screen if the controls do not appear.

↩: Returns to the previous screen

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

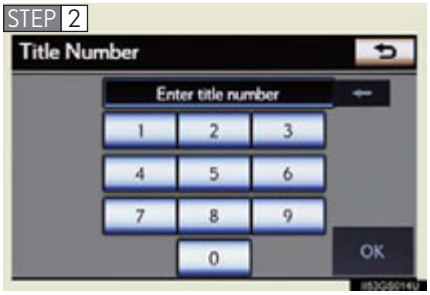
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Searching for a desired screen

■ Searching by title

STEP 1 Touch “Search” on the “DVD Options” screen.

STEP 2



Input the desired title number and then touch “OK”.

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

■ Searching by chapter

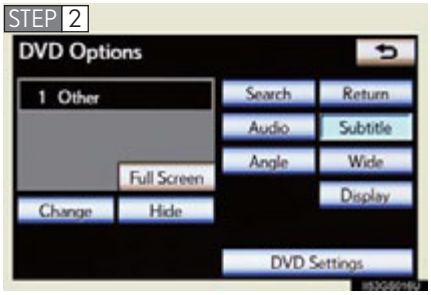
Press “∧” or “∨” on the “PRST•TRACK” button or turn the “TUNE•SCROLL” knob.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch “Subtitle” on the “DVD Options” screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch “Change”, the next available language is selected.

The languages available are restricted to those available on the DVD disc.

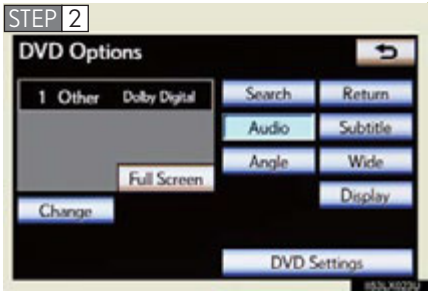
“Hide”: Hides the subtitles

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the audio language

STEP 1 Touch “Audio” on the “DVD Options” screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch “Change”, the next available language is selected.

The languages available are restricted to those available on the DVD disc.

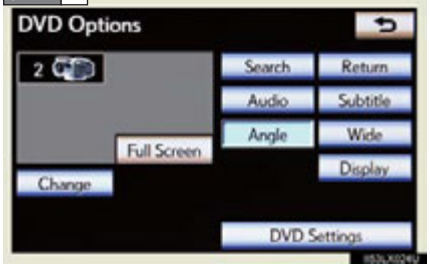
: Returns to the previous screen

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the angle (if the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Touch "Angle" on the "DVD Options" screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch "Change", the next available angle is selected.

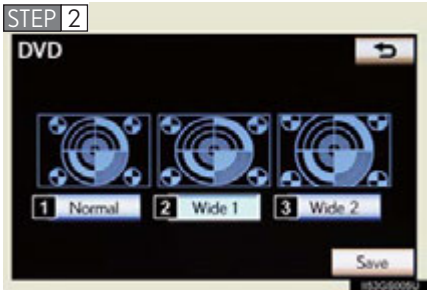
The angles available are restricted to those available on the DVD disc.

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing screen size

STEP 1 Touch "Wide" on the "DVD Options" screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired display. After setting, touch "Save".

1 Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black

2 Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen

3 Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen

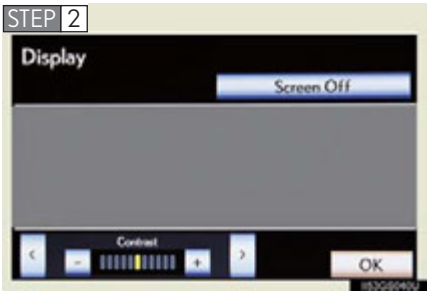
: Returns to the previous screen

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the screen

STEP 1 Touch “Display” on the “DVD Options” screen.

STEP 2



Touch “<” or “>” to display the desired item to be adjusted, and then touch “OK”.

The screen goes off when “Screen Off” is touched. To turn the screen back on, press any button. The selected screen appears.

	R	G
Color	Red	Green
	-	+
Tone	Lighter	Darker
Contrast	Weaker	Stronger
Brightness	Darker	Brighter

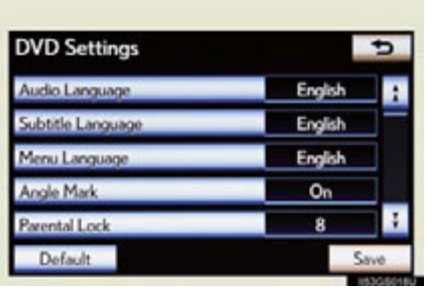
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

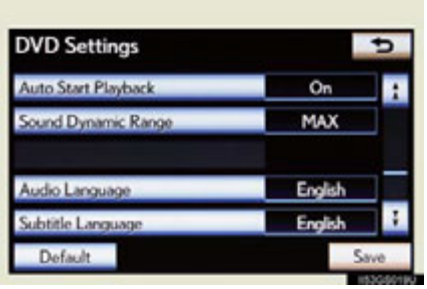
Initial DVD settings

■ Displaying "DVD Settings" screen

STEP 1 Touch "DVD Settings" on the "DVD Options" screen.

STEP 2 Touch the setting to be changed.





After you change the settings, touch "Save".

"Default": Restores default settings

: Returns to the previous screen

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Setting audio language**

STEP 1 Touch "Audio Language" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired language to be heard on the "Audio Language" screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 526)

■ **Setting subtitle language**

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle Language" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired language to be read on the "Subtitle Language" screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 526)

■ **Setting menu language**

STEP 1 Touch "Menu Language" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired language to be read on the "Menu Language" screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 526)

■ **Setting angle mark**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Touch "Angle Mark" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

■ **Parental lock**

STEP 1 Touch "Parental Lock" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code on the "Key Code" screen.

If you enter wrong numbers, touch  to delete the numbers.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1-8) on the "Select Restriction Level" screen. (→P. 532)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Setting the auto start**

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing.

STEP 1 Touch "Auto Start Playback" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

■ **Setting sound dynamic range**

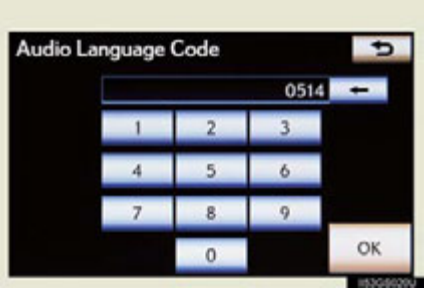
The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Touch "Sound Dynamic Range" on the "DVD Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Select "MAX", "STD" or "MIN".

■ **Entering a language code**

If you touch "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "Menu Language" screen you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.



Input the 4-digit language code and then touch "OK".

: Deletes the last input digit

: Returns to the previous screen

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali, Bangla	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scottish-Gaelic	1114	Kannada

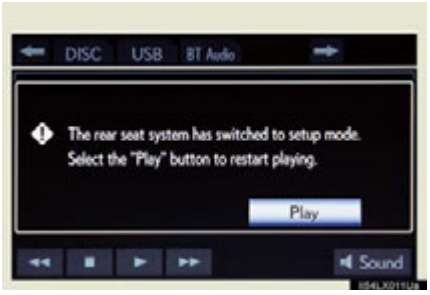
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian, Lettish	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto-Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sango	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo-Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tongan
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

Setup operation from the rear seat (vehicles with rear seat entertainment system)



Touch "Play" to cancel this setup operation from the rear seat.

This screen appears when a rear passenger setting selects the setup menu.

When a rear passenger selects set up menu

Follow the directions on the warning screen that is displayed.
Under the same condition, the rear passenger can cancel the set up operation from the front seat.

Rear system lock

→P. 582

Error messages

If "Region Code Error" is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 529

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Error messages

If the following error messages appear on the screen, refer to the table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

The error messages may differ from those shown below depending on the language selected.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No disc found.	There is no disc in the player.	Insert a disc.
Check DISC	• The disc is dirty or damaged. • The disc is inserted upside down. • The disc is not playable with the player.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
DISC Error	• There is a malfunction within the system. • Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.	• Eject the disc. • Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.
No music files found.	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC/PAL color TV formats. DVD video discs conforming to another format such as SECAM cannot be used.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as "ALL" or "1", you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, "Region Code Error" appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.

Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
NTSC/PAL	Indicates NTSC/PAL format of color TV
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your player:

- SACD
- dts CD
- Copy-protected CD
- DVD audio
- Video CD
- DVD+R
- DVD+RW
- DVD-RAM

■ **CD/DVD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ DVD video disc information

- DVD video discs
  A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby Digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.
- Viewer restrictions
  This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

  Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

  Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

  Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- Multi-angle option
  You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- Multi-language option
  You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- Region codes
  The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 530)
- Audio
  This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.
- Title and chapter
  Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

  Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

  Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Sound**

Dolby Digital
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

■ **MP3 and WMA files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 8, 32, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9 (9.1/9.2)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9 (9.1/9.2): CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps, VBR)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

The Gracenote® media database

● Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.



● CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Gracenote® End User License Agreement**

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party.

YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote

⚠ CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

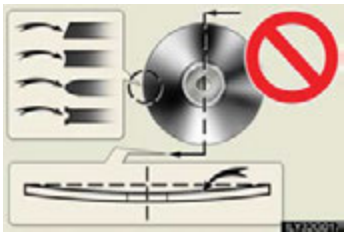
NOTICE

■ **Discs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs.
Also, do not use 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters, DualDiscs or printable discs.
Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm)



- Low-quality or deformed discs



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

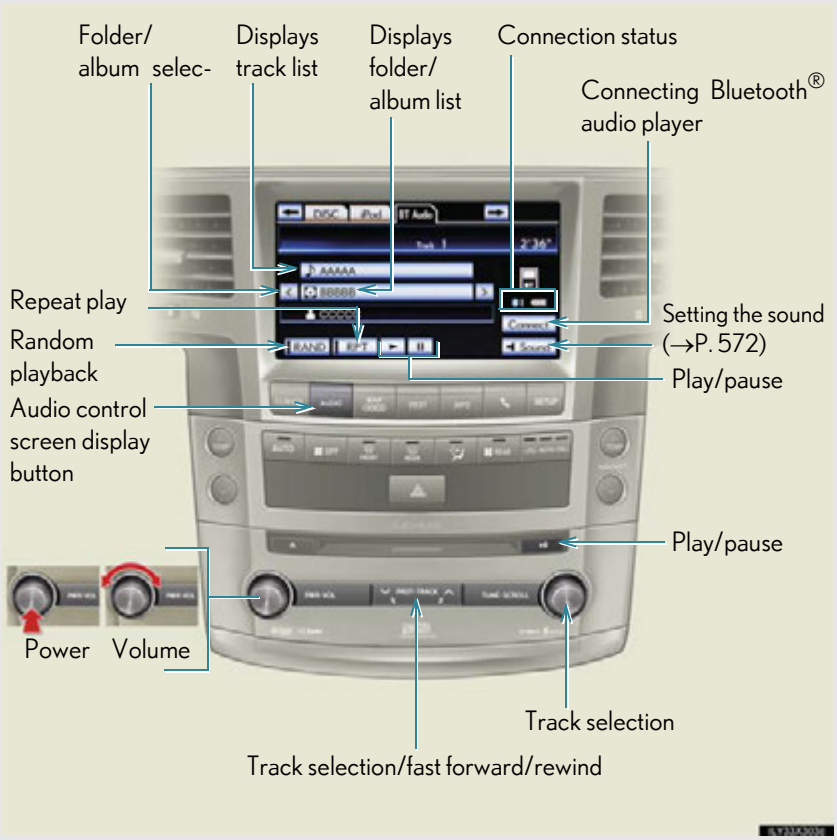
- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Listening to Bluetooth® audio

The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.
This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

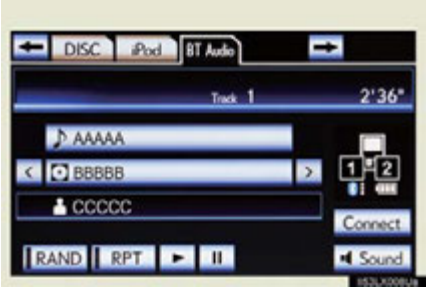
Press the "AUDIO" button if a Bluetooth® audio player has already been connected.
Touch the "BT Audio" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "BT Audio" tab is selected.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the screen.



1 Connection status
2 Battery charge

Indicators	Conditions		
Connection status	Good	⟷	No connection
Battery charge	Full	⟷	Empty

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once registered, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (→P. 674)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, consult your player's accompanying instruction manual.

■ When "Bluetooth* Power" is turned on

When the portable player is on standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When "Bluetooth* Power" is turned off

Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.

STEP 1



Touch "Connect".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 2



Touch the desired portable player.

STEP 3



When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed. It is now possible to use the portable player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing Bluetooth® audio



Touch ► to play, touch ❚❚ to pause or press ►❚ to play/pause.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

Selecting a track/folder/album

On the audio top screen

Touch ">" or "<" on the screen to select the next/previous folder/album.

On the playlist screen

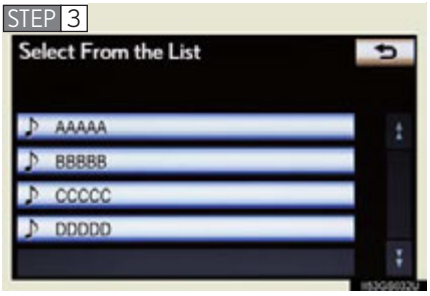


STEP 1 Touch the album name on the screen to display the playlist screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired screen button.

If the folder name on the screen is touched, the track list screen is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Touch the desired track name on the screen.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 track/folder groups.

"PRST•TRACK" button: Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to scroll through the track/folder list one by one.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track/folder list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a track

■ On the audio top screen

Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob or press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to select the desired track number.

■ On the track list screen

STEP 1



Touch the track name on the screen to display the track list screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired track number.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 track groups.

"PRST•TRACK" button: Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to scroll through the track list one by one.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding and rewinding a track

Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to fast forward or rewind.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Random playback

■ Playing the tracks on the album in random order

Touch “RAND” on the screen.

Each time “RAND” is touched, the mode changes as follows:
album random → all track random → off

■ Playing tracks from all the albums in random order

Touch “RAND” repeatedly until “ALB.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RAND” again.

Repeat play

■ Repeating a track

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

Each time “RPT” is touched, the mode changes as follows:
track repeat → album repeat → off

■ Repeating an album

Touch “RPT” repeatedly until “ALB.RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RPT” again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If you touch** 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ **Connecting Bluetooth® audio player**

- Touching "Connect Portable Player" on the "Bluetooth*" screen also connects a Bluetooth® audio player. (→P. 681)
- When none of the selectable portable players have been registered, a screen confirming registration is displayed. The registration method is the same as phone registration. (→P. 674)
- When the currently connected portable player is selected, a screen confirming the selected player's disconnection is displayed. (→P. 676)
- If connection fails once, a changing connection method confirmation screen is displayed. If connection fails 2 or more times, a message will be displayed. When this message is displayed, try again.
  *: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio system**

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
  - The portable player is turned off
  - The portable player is not connected
  - The portable player battery is low
- There may be a delay if phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the audio unit. If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the portable player, and this system does not have a charging function.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Compatible models

Portable players must correspond to the following specifications:

- Bluetooth® specification
  Ver. 1.1 or higher
  (Recommended: Ver. 2.1+EDR or higher)
- Profile
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
    (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
    (Recommended: Ver. 1.4 or higher)

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player. Also, the different screen is displayed depending on which portable player is connecting.

Please go to the website at http://www.lexus.com/MobileLink to find approved portable players for this system.

Certification

→P. 622

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Reconnecting the portable player**

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If you have switched off the portable player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable player again
- Enter the portable player

■ **When transferring ownership of your vehicle**

Be sure to remove the registered portable player from the system. (→P. 676)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Do not use the portable player or connect the Bluetooth® system.

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Listening to a USB memory

Connecting a USB memory enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Press the "AUDIO" button if a USB memory has already been connected. Touch the "USB" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "USB" tab is selected.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Connecting the USB memory

STEP 1



Press the lid, open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

STEP 2 Press the "AUDIO" button.

Playing a USB memory

Play/pause

▶ Tag mode



Touch ▶ to play, touch ⏸ to pause or press ▶/⏸ to play/pause.

▶ Folder mode



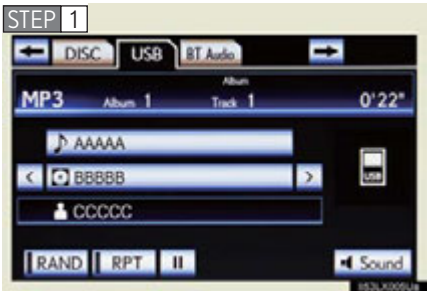
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting a folder/album



Touch ">" or "<" on the screen to select the next/previous folder/ album.

Selecting a folder, artist or album



Touch the folder/album name on the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Touch the desired tab and select the desired folder, artist or album.

Character screen buttons, “ABC”, “DEF” etc., allow a direct jump to list entries that begin with the same letter as the character button.
Each time the same character screen button is touched, the list starting with the subsequent character is displayed.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 folder/artist/album groups.

“TUNE•SCROLL” knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the folder/artist/album list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a file/track

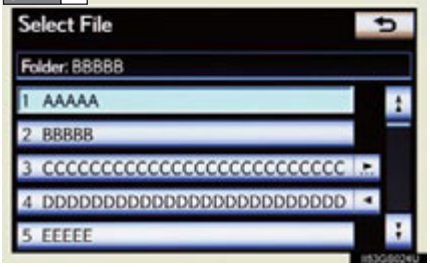
■ Selecting one file/track at a time

Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob or press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to select the desired file/track.

■ Selecting a file/track from the list

STEP 1 Touch the file/track name on the screen to display the following file/track list screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired file/track number.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 file/track groups.

"PRST•TRACK" button: Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to scroll through the file/track list one by one.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the file/track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a file/track

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Random playback

Playing files/tracks from a particular folder in random order

Touch “RAND” on the screen.
Each time “RAND” is touched, the mode changes as follows:
random (1 folder/album random) → folder/album random (all folders/albums random) → off

Playing the all folders/albums from a USB memory in random order

Touch “RAND” repeatedly until “FLD.RAND”/“ALB.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RAND” again.

Repeat play

Repeating a file/track

Touch “RPT” on the screen.
Each time “RPT” is touched, the mode changes as follows:

- When “RAND” is off
  file/track repeat → folder/album repeat → off
- When “RAND” is on
  file/track repeat → off

Repeating a folder/album

Touch “RPT” repeatedly until “FLD.RPT”/“ALB.RPT” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RPT” again.

Available except when random playback is selected

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If you touch** 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ **USB memory functions**

- When the USB memory is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory will resume playing from the same point it was last used.
- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

■ **When using a USB memory**

You may be unable to use the instrument panel power outlet if the USB memory is connected to the USB port at the same time.

■ **Error messages for USB memory**

"USB Error": This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.
"No music files found.": This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

■ **USB memory**

- Compatible devices
  USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback.
- Compatible device formats
  The following device formats can be used:
  - USB communication formats: USB2.0 HS (480 Mbps) and FS (12 Mbps)
  - File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
  - Correspondence class: Mass storage class

  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

  Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:
  - Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
  - Maximum number of folders in a device: 3000 (including the root)
  - Maximum number of files in a device: 9999
  - Maximum number of files per folder: 255

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● MP3 and WMA files
MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.
Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.
WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.
This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.
There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 48-320 (kbps, VBR)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● File names
The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags
ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.
The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions
If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Do not connect an USB memory or operate the controls.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the USB memory or its terminal**

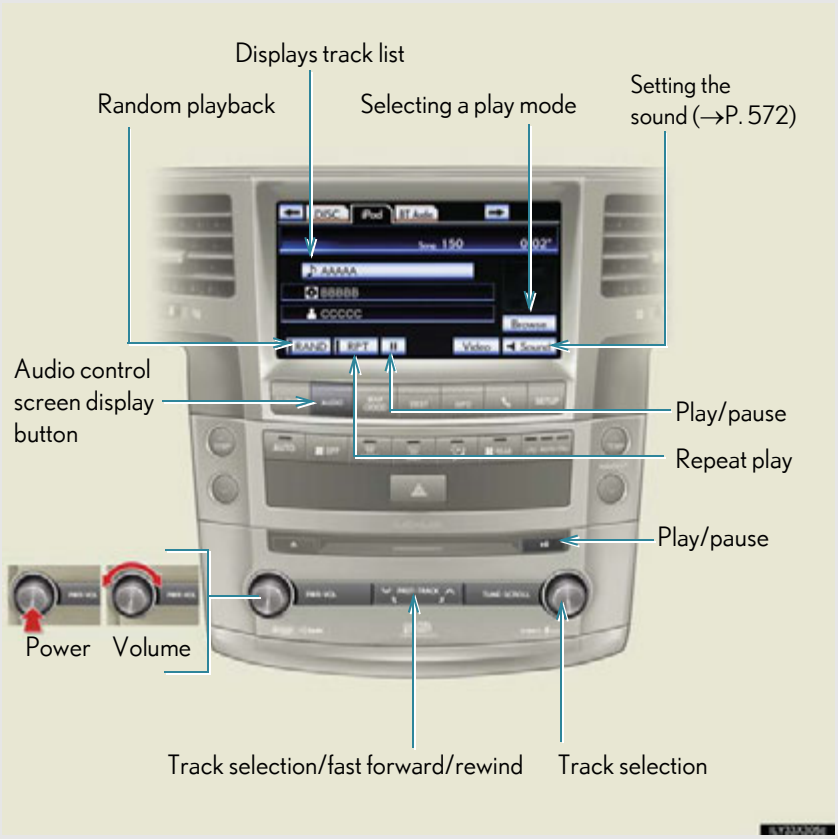
- Do not leave USB memory in the vehicle. The temperature inside of the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the USB memory.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Listening to an iPod

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Press the "AUDIO" button if an iPod has already been connected.
Touch the "iPod" tab or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly until the "iPod" tab is selected.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Connecting an iPod

STEP 1



Press the lid, open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

STEP 2 Press the "AUDIO" button.

Cover art display setting

When the track currently being played has cover art data, it can be displayed.

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button.

STEP 2 Touch "Audio" on the "Setup" screen.

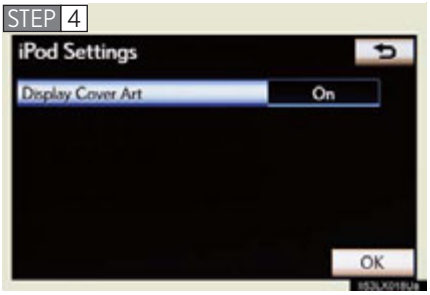
STEP 3



Touch "iPod Settings".

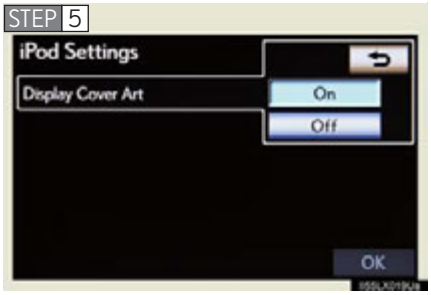
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



Touch “Display Cover Art”.

STEP 5



Touch “On” or “Off”.

STEP 6 Touch “OK”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing iPod

Play/pause



Touch ▶ to play, touch ❚❚ to pause or press ▶❚❚ to play/pause.

Selecting a play mode

STEP 1



Touch "Browse".

STEP 2



Select the desired play mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting, fast forwarding or rewinding a track

■ Selecting one track at a time

Turn the "TUNE•SCROLL" knob or press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to select the desired track.

■ Selecting a track from the list

STEP 1 Touch the track name on the screen to display the following track list screen.



Touch the desired track number.

, : Touch to move the list up or down by 5 track groups.

"PRST•TRACK" button: Press "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button to scroll through the track list one by one.

"TUNE•SCROLL" knob: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to quickly scroll up or down the track list.

, : If appears to the right of an item name, the complete name is too long for the screen. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to move to the beginning of the name.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "PRST•TRACK" button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Random playback

Playing tracks in random order

Touch “RAND” on the screen.
Each time “RAND” is touched, the mode changes as follows:
track shuffle → album shuffle → off

Playing the albums in random order

Touch “RAND” repeatedly until “ALB.RAND” appears on the screen.

To cancel, touch “RAND” again.

Repeat play

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

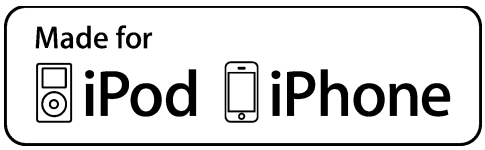
“RPT” appears on the screen.
To cancel, touch “RPT” again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If you touch** 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ **About iPod**



- "Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ **iPod cover art**

- Depending on the iPod and the songs in the iPod, iPod cover art may be displayed. This function can be changed to "On" or "Off". (→P. 563)
- It may take time to display iPod cover art, and the iPod may not be operated while the cover art display is in process.
- Only iPod cover art that is saved in JPEG format can be displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **iPod functions**

- When the iPod connected to the system includes iPod video, the system can only output the sound by touching "Video" on the "iPod" screen.
- Depending on the iPod, the video sound may not be able to be heard.
- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.

■ **When using an iPod**

You maybe unable to use the instrument panel power outlet if the iPod is connected to the USB port at the same time.

■ **Battery charge**

When an iPod is connected using a genuine iPod cable, the iPod starts charging its battery.

■ **Error messages for iPod**

"iPod Error": This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

"No music files found.": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

"Please check the iPod firmware version.": This indicates that the software version is not compatible. Perform the iPod firmware updates and try again.

"iPod authorization failed.": This indicates that it failed to authorize the iPod. Please check your iPod.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compatible models

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

● Made for

- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod with video
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Do not connect an iPod or operate the controls.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the iPod or its terminal**

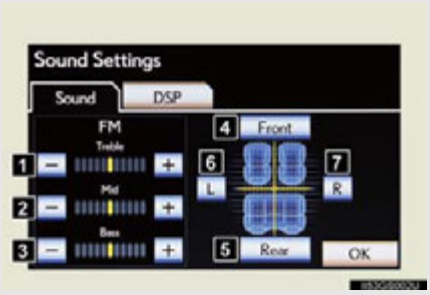
- Do not leave the iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the iPod.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Touch Sound to adjust the sound settings.

▶ "Sound" tab



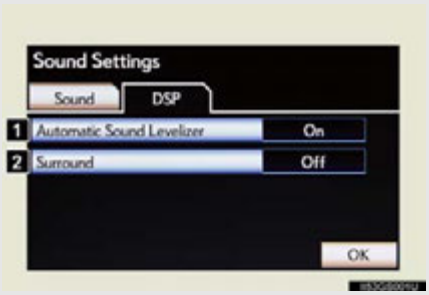
1 2 3 Touch "-" or "+" to adjust the treble, mid or bass.

4 5 Touch "Front" or "Rear" to adjust the front/rear audio balance.

6 7 Touch "L" or "R" to adjust the left/right audio balance.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ "DSP" tab



1 Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

2 Surround on/off

After sound setting has been changed, touch "OK".

■ **The sound quality level is adjusted individually**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for the each audio mode separately.

■ **About Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)**

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed, wind noise or other noise.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the AUX port

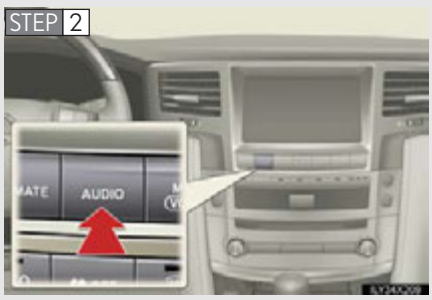
This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Press the lid, open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2



Press the "AUDIO" button.

STEP 3 Touch the "AUX" tab on the screen or press the "AUDIO" button repeatedly to change to AUX mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

■ **When using the AUX port**

You may be unable to use the instrument panel power outlet if a device is connected to the AUX port at the same time.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Do not connect portable audio device or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to portable audio device**

- Do not leave portable audio device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable audio device while it is connected as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



1 Turns the power on, selects audio source, mute or pause

2 Volume

3 Radio mode: Selects a radio station

CD mode: Selects a track, file and folder (MP3 and WMA)

DVD mode: Selects a chapter

Bluetooth® audio mode: Selects a track and album

iPod mode: Selects a track

USB memory mode: Selects a file and folder/ album

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning on the power

Press the “MODE” switch when the audio system is turned off.

Changing the audio source

Press the “MODE” switch to select an audio mode.
Each press changes the mode sequentially if the desired mode is ready to use.

Adjusting the volume

Press the “+” switch to increase the volume and the “-” switch to decrease the volume.

Silencing a sound or pause the current operation

Press and hold the “MODE” switch.

To cancel, press and hold the “MODE” switch again.

Selecting the preset station/channel (radio)

STEP 1 Press the “MODE” switch to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press the “∧” or “∨” switch to select.

Seeking a radio station/channel

STEP 1 Press the “MODE” switch to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold the “∧” or “∨” switch until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press either switch.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting a track/file or chapter

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" switch to select the CD/DVD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select.

To return to the beginning of the current track, file or chapter, press the "∨" switch once quickly.

Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" switch to select Bluetooth® audio or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "∧" or "∨" switch until a beep is heard to select.

Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" switch to select the CD (only when MP3/WMA disc is in use) or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "∧" or "∨" switch until a beep is heard to select.

⚠ CAUTION

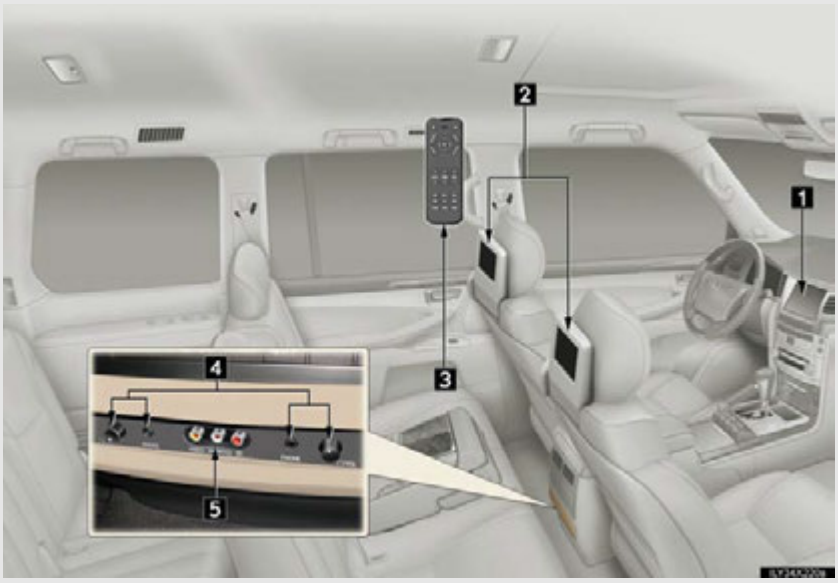
■ To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seat entertainment system features*

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.



1 Front audio system
2 Display
3 Rear seat entertainment system controller
4 Headphone volume control knobs and headphone jacks
5 A/V input port

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Display

When audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port, rear passengers can enjoy different audio sources on each display. (→P. 611)

Rear seat entertainment system controller



1 Turns display off

To turn the display back on, press the "SOURCE", "DISC" or "VIDEO" button.

2 Selects the display to be operated

Buttons other than ⏻ can be operated if the switch is switched.

L: left side display
R: right side display

3 Turns the rear seat entertainment system on or off

Caution screen



This screen appears for a few seconds when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headphone jacks



To listen to the rear audio, open the cover and use headphones.

1 To use the headphones
Connect them to the jack.

2 To adjust the volume
Turn the knob clockwise to increase the volume. Turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

Changing the source

STEP 1



STEP 2



Press the "SOURCE", button to display the audio source selection screen.

1 Turning on the audio source selection screen

2 Selecting an icon

3 Inputting the selected icon

Select an audio source.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

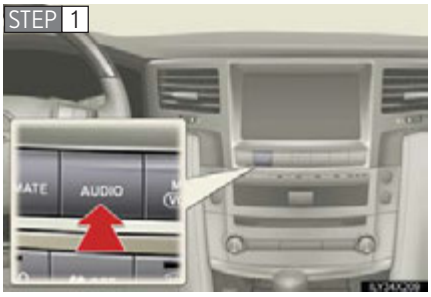
Changing the speaker output



To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn "Speaker Output" on.

Operation from the front seats

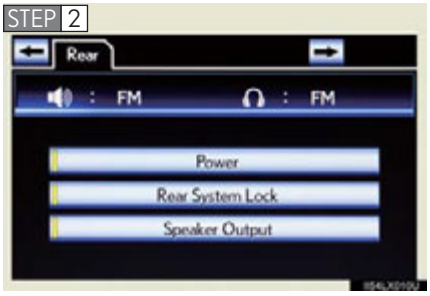
The rear seat display can be operated from the front seats.



Press the "AUDIO" button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 2



Touch the "Rear" tab on the screen.

STEP 3 Touch the desired button. The selected button indicator is highlighted.

"POWER": Turns the rear screen on or off.

"Rear System Lock": Locks the system so passengers in the rear seats cannot operate the rear entertainment system.

"Speaker Output": Enables the front speakers to output the front audio system's audio source.

■ **The rear seat entertainment system can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When appears on the screen**

It indicates that the selected icon cannot be used at this time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

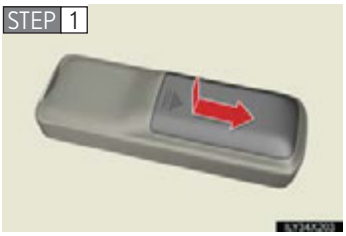
■ **Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)**



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being depleted. Remove the insulating sheet before using the controller.

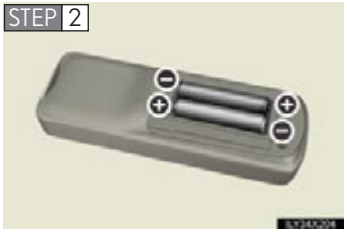
■ **When the controller batteries are fully depleted**

STEP 1



Remove the cover.

STEP 2



Remove the depleted batteries and install new batteries.

■ **If the controller batteries are discharged**

The following symptoms may occur.

- The rear seat entertainment system controller will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **Use 2 AA batteries**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, electric appliance shop, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by your Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Headphones**

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

■ **Volume**

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent accidents and electric shock**

Do not disassemble or modify the controller.

■ **When the controller is not used**

Stow the controller.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ **For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada**

Laser products (→P. 465)

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning the display**

Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.
If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

■ **To prevent damage to the controller**

- Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
- Do not drop or knock the controller against hard objects.
- Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the controller.

■ **DVD player**

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the controller.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

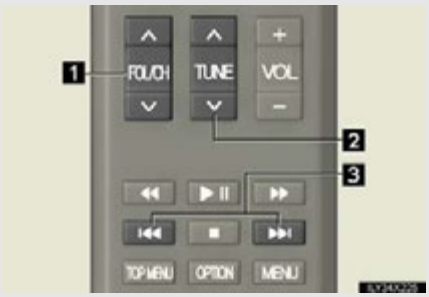
Using the radio

Display



Select radio mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

Controller



1 Selecting a preset station/channel

2 3 Tuning the station/channel

Selecting a preset station/channel

Press "∧" or "∨" of the "FOL/CH" button until the desired station/channel band appears on the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tuning the station

▶ Using the "TUNE" button

Press "∧" or "∨" of the "TUNE" button on the controller until the desired station/channel appears on the screen.

Press and hold "∧" or "∨" of the "TUNE" button and the stations/channels will be searched automatically one after another.

▶ Using ⏭ or ⏮

Press ⏭ or ⏮ until the desired station appears on the screen.

Press ⏭ or ⏮ until a beep is heard. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station/channel of the nearest frequency.

Continue to press and hold ⏭ or ⏮ after a beep is heard and stations will be sought for automatically. When ⏭ or ⏮ is released the radio will seek up or down for a station/channel of the nearest frequency.

When a different audio source is selected at the front seats

Radio mode cannot be selected at the rear seats.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the radio (internet radio broadcast)

One of Apps' features is the ability to listen to internet radio. In order to use this service, an Apps compatible phone and the navigation system needs to be set. For details, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".



Select Apps mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

■ **When a different audio source is selected at the front seats**

Radio (internet radio broadcast) mode cannot be selected at the rear seats.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing an audio CD/CD text

■ Display



Select disc mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

■ Controller



1 Play/pause
2 Fast forward or rewind
3 Selecting a track (press)
Fast forward or rewind (press and hold)

Selecting a track

Press ⏭ or ⏮ until the desired track number appears on the screen.

Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

Press ⏩ or ⏪, or press and hold ⏭ or ⏮.

Playing or pausing a track

Press ⏯.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

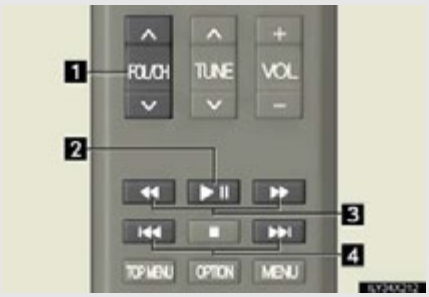
Playing WMA/MP3 discs

■ Display



Select disc mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

■ Controller



1 Selecting a folder
2 Play/pause
3 Fast forward or rewind
4 Selecting a file (press)
Fast forward or rewind (press and hold)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting a file

Press ⏭ or ⏮ until the desired file number appears on the screen.

Selecting a folder

Press "∧" or "∨" of the "FOL/CH" button until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

Fast forwarding or rewinding a file

Press ⏩ or ⏪, or press and hold ⏭ or ⏮.

Playing or pausing a file

Press ⏯.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

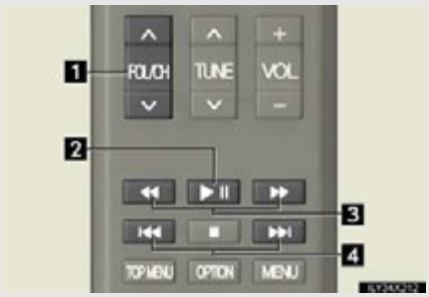
Playing a Bluetooth® audio

■ Display



Select BT-A mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

■ Controller



1 Selecting an album
2 Play/pause
3 Fast forward or rewind
4 Selecting a track (press)
Fast forward or rewind (press and hold)

Selecting a desired album

Press "∧" or "∨" of the "FOL/CH" button until the desired album number appears on the screen.

Selecting a desired track

Press ⏭ or ⏮ repeatedly until the desired track number appears on the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

Press ▶▶ or ◀◀, or press and hold ▶▶| or |◀◀.

Playing and pausing a track

Press ▶II.

■ **When a different audio source is selected at the front seats**

BT-A mode cannot be selected at the rear seats.

■ **Connecting Bluetooth® audio player**

→P. 549

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio system**

→P. 549

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

→P. 549

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

→P. 549

■ **About Bluetooth®**

→P. 550

■ **Compatible models**

→P. 550

■ **Certification**

→P. 622

■ **Reconnecting the portable player**

→P. 551

■ **When transferring ownership of your vehicle**

→P. 551

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ While driving

→P. 551

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

→P. 551

NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

→P. 551

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing a USB memory

■ Connecting a USB

→P. 553

■ Display



Select USB mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

■ Controller



1 Selecting a folder/album
2 Play/pause
3 Fast forward or rewind
4 Selecting a file/track (press)
Fast forward or rewind (press and hold)

Selecting a desired folder or album

Press "∧" or "∨" of the "FOL/CH" button until the desired folder/album number appears on the screen.

Selecting a desired file or track

Press ⏭ or ⏮ repeatedly until the desired file/track number appears on the screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fast forwarding or rewinding a file or track

Press ▶▶ or ◀◀, or press and hold ▶▶| or |◀◀.

Playing or pausing a file or track

Press ▶II.

■ **When a different audio source is selected at the front seats**

USB mode cannot be selected at the rear seat

■ **USB memory functions**

→P. 558

■ **USB memory**

→P. 558

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving**

→P. 561

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the USB memory or its terminal**

→P. 561

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Connecting an iPod
→P. 563

■ Display



Select iPod mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

■ Controller



1 Play/pause
2 Fast forward or rewind
3 Selecting a track (press)
Fast forward or rewind (press and hold)

Selecting a desired track

Press ⏭ or ⏮ repeatedly until the desired track number appears on the screen.

Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

Press ⏩ or ⏪, or press and hold ⏭ or ⏮.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing or pausing a track

Press ▶II.

■ **When a different audio source is selected at the front seats**

iPod mode cannot be selected at the rear seats.

■ **About iPod**

→P. 568

■ **iPod functions**

→P. 569

■ **Battery charge**

→P. 569

■ **Compatible models**

→P. 570

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving**

→P. 571

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the iPod or its terminal**

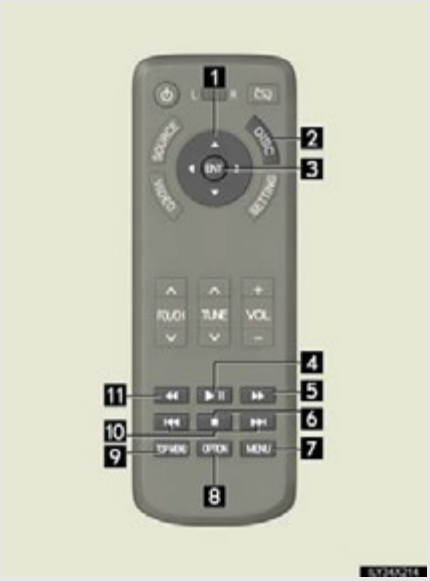
→P. 571

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing DVD video

Press the "DISC" button or select disc mode to display DVD video.

Controller

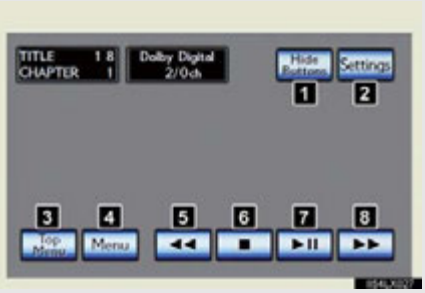


1 Selecting an icon
2 Turning on the DVD mode
3 Inputting the selected icon
4 Playing/pausing a disc
5 Fast forwarding a disc during playback and forward slowly during pause
6 Stopping a screen
7 Turning on the menu
8 Turning on the control icon screen
9 Turning on the title selection screen
10 Press to select a chapter
Press and hold to fast forward or rewind a chapter
11 Rewinding a disc

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Control icon screen

Press the "OPTION" button on the controller if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video, and the following screen appears.

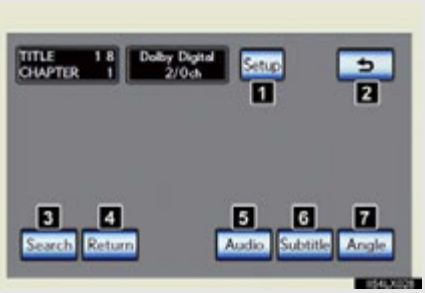


1 Hide the buttons
2 Setting screen appears (→P. 605)
3 4 Menu screen appears
5 Rewind
6 Stop
7 Play/pause
8 Fast forward

If ⃠ appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Settings screen

Select "Settings" on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.



1 Change initial setting
2 Return to previous screen
3 Search by title
4 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
5 Change audio language
6 Change subtitle language
7 Change angle

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning on or off the control icons

Press the "OPTION" button on the controller to turn on the control icons.

Press the "OPTION" button on the controller once again or select "Hide Buttons" to turn off the control icon.

Turning on the title selection screen

Press the "TOP MENU" button on the controller or select "Top Menu" to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Turning on the menu screen

Press the "MENU" button on the controller or select "Menu" to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Press  or  , or press and hold  or  .

Slow playback

Select  and then select  .

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Returning to the previous screen

Select “Return” to return to the previous screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Searching for a desired screen

■ Searching by title

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then select “OK”.

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

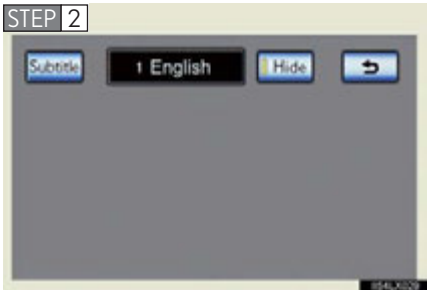
■ Searching by chapter

Press or to select a chapter.

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Select “Subtitle” on the settings screen.

STEP 2



Select “Subtitle”.

Each time you select “Subtitle”, the next available language is selected.

“Hide”: Hides the control icons

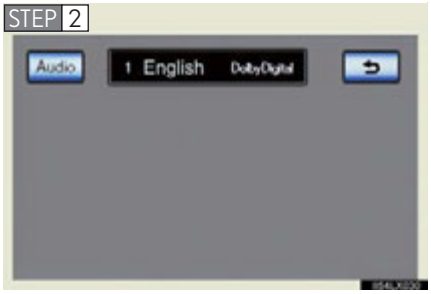
: Returns to the previous screen

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the audio language

STEP 1 Select “Audio” on the setting screen.

STEP 2



Select “Audio”.

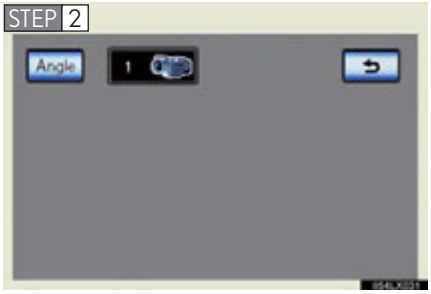
Each time you select “Audio”, the next available language is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Select “Angle” on the setting screen.

STEP 2



Select “Angle”.

Each time you select “Angle”, the next available angle is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

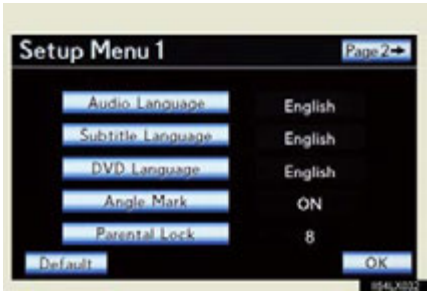
Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

STEP 1 Select “Setup” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2 Select the setting to be changed.

▶ Page 1



After you change the settings, select “OK”.

The initial setting screen will be turned off and return to the picture previously.

“Default”: Restores default settings

“Page 2”: Go to page 2

: Returns to the previous screen

▶ Page 2



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Setting audio language**

STEP 1 Select “Audio Language”.

STEP 2 Select the language you want to hear on the “Audio Language” screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 607)

■ **Setting subtitle language**

STEP 1 Select “Subtitle Language”.

STEP 2 Select a language you want to read on the “Subtitle Language” screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 607)

■ **Setting menu language**

STEP 1 Select “DVD Language”.

STEP 2 Select the language you want to read on the “DVD Language” screen.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 607)

■ **Setting angle mark**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Select “Angle Mark”.

STEP 2 Select “ON” or “OFF”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Parental lock**

STEP 1 Select "Parental Lock".

STEP 2 Enter the 4-digit personal code on the "Enter Key Code" screen.

If you enter wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 532)

■ **Setting sound dynamic range**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Select "Sound Dynamic Range".

STEP 2 Select "MAX", "STD" or "MIN".

■ **Entering a language code**

If you select "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

STEP 1 Enter the 4-digit language code. (→P. 526)

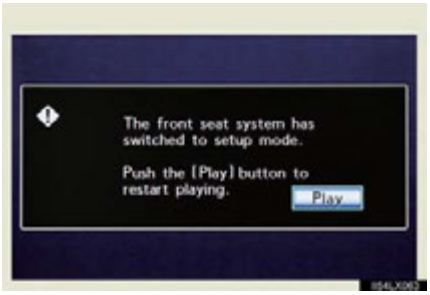
If you enter wrong numbers, select ← to delete the numbers.

STEP 2 Select "OK".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setup operation from the front seat

This screen appears when a front passenger selects the setup menu.



Rear passengers can cancel this setup operation by selecting "Play". The player will resume normal play.

Likewise, a front passenger can cancel a rear passenger's selection of the setup menu.

Error messages

If "Region code error" is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 529

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DVD player and DVD video disc information

■ Error messages
→P. 529

■ DVD video discs
→P. 530

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs
→P. 530

■ Discs that can be used
→P. 531

■ DVD video disc information
→P. 532

■ Sound
→P. 533

■ MP3 and WMA files
→P. 533

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

→P. 538

NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

→P. 539

■ Player precautions

→P. 540

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the video mode

Using the port



Open the cover.

The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Video input port

White: Left channel audio input port

Red: Right channel audio input port

Selecting the video mode



Press the "VIDEO" button, or select "Rr-A/V" on the source screen to change to the video mode.

In VTR mode, different sound/visual modes can be enjoyed for the left and right screens when "Speaker Output" is off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

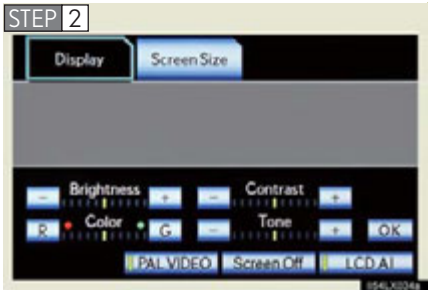
Changing to PAL format

STEP 1



Press the “SETTING” button.

STEP 2



Turn “PAL VIDEO” on when PAL format equipment is connected to the A/V input port.

“PAL VIDEO” indicator is highlighted.

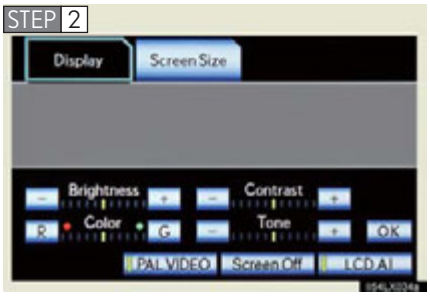
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting LCD AI

Automatically determines the tone of the video image and sets the contrast to an optimum level, displaying a sharp image.

STEP 1 Press the "SETTING" button on the controller.

STEP 2



Select "LCD AI".

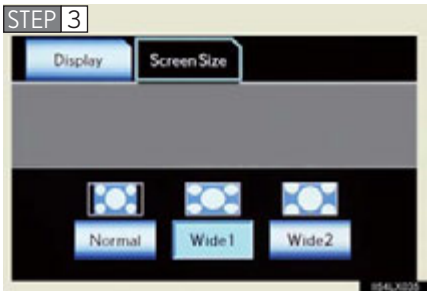
"LCD AI" indicator is highlighted.

Setting the display mode

STEP 1 Press the "SETTING" button on the controller.

STEP 2 Select "Screen Size" tab on the screen.

STEP 3



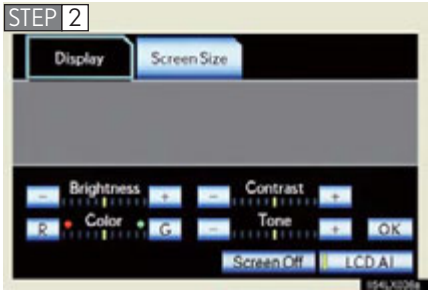
Select "Normal", "Wide1" or "Wide2".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the screen

STEP 1 Press the “SETTING” button on the controller.

STEP 2



Select the color, tone, contrast or brightness, and make adjustments. Select “OK”.

	“R”	“G”
“Color”	Red	Green
	“-”	“+”
“Tone”	Lighter	Darker
“Contrast”	Lower	Higher
“Brightness”	Darker	Brighter

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **A/V input port**

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

■ **Power outlet**

The power outlet is used to connect the audio-video equipment. (→P. 705)

■ **To turn off the display**



Select "Screen off" on the screen.
To turn the display back on, press the "SOURCE", "DISC", "VIDEO" or "SETTING" button on the controller.

■ **LCD AI**

The image quality is automatically adjusted when the "LCD AI" indicator is on, brightness and contrast adjustment becomes less effective.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the A/V input port is not in use**

Keep the A/V input port cover closed.
Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hands-free system (for cellular phone)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your cellular phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® cellular phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows a cellular phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.

The illustrations of the hands-free system screens shown here may slightly vary depending on the type of the system.

■ Telephone switch



1 Off hook switch
- Sending
- Receiving
- "Phone" screen display

2 On hook switch
- End call
- Refuse call

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Microphone



You can use the microphone when talking on the phone.

The person you are speaking to can be heard from the front speakers.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 625)

■ Steering switch



Adjusting the volume

Press "+" to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Status display

You can check indicators such as signal strength and battery charge on the "Phone" screen.



1 Connection status
2 Battery charge
3 Call area
4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Good ⟷ No connection
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty
Call area	"Rm": Roaming area
Signal strength	Excellent ⟷ Poor

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system is muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air conditioning is set to high
  - There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a cellular phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the cellular phone is turned off
- If you are outside service range
- If the cellular phone is not connected
- If the cellular phone's battery is low

■ **When using the touch screen**

Dimmed screen buttons cannot be operated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the audio unit. If the cellular phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/Signal status**

- This display may not correspond exactly with the cellular phone itself.
- When the cellular phone is not connected, "No connect" is displayed.
- When the cellular phone is out of the service area or in a place inaccessible by radio waves, "No Service" is displayed.

■ **When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time**

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
- Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.

■ **About the phonebook in this system**

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Image data
- Messages
- Quick reply messages
- All phone settings

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ **When you release your car**

Be sure to initialize your data. (→P. 424)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Compatible models

This system supports the following service.

- Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 2.1+EDR or higher)
- Profiles
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.5 or higher)
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1 or higher
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - MAP (Message Access Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - SPP (Serial Port Profile) Ver. 1.1 or higher*

    *: This profile is necessary when using Apps. (→Navigation System Owner's Manual)

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP, PBAP, MAP or SPP service individually.

If the connected Bluetooth® phone version is older than recommended or incompatible, this function may not be used.

Please go to http://www.lexus.com/MobileLink to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Certification**

FCC ID: AJDK041

IC: 775E-K041

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC Rules and Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of this device.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux la partie 15 des règles de la FCC et CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with RSS-310 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the condition that this device does not cause harmful interference.

Cet appareil est conforme au CNR-310 d'Industrie Canada. Son exploitation est autorisée sous réserve que l'appareil ne cause pas de brouillage préjudiciable.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ FCC WARNING

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements énoncées pour un environnement non contrôlé et respecte les règles les radioélectriques (RF) de la FCC lignes directrices d'exposition dans le Supplément C à OET65 et d'exposition aux fréquences radioélectriques (RF) CNR-102 de l'IC. Cet équipement émet une énergie RF très faible qui est considérée conforme sans évaluation de l'exposition maximale autorisée. Cependant, cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé en gardant une distance de 7.9 in. (20 cm) ou plus entre le dispositif rayonnant et le corps (à l'exception des extrémités: mains, poignets, pieds et chevilles).

▶ For vehicles sold in the USA

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Under Industry Canada regulations, this radio transmitter may only operate using an antenna of a type and maximum (or lesser) gain approved for the transmitter by Industry Canada. To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that necessary for successful communication.

Conformément à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada, le présent émetteur radio peut fonctionner avec une antenne d'un type et d'un gain maximal (ou inférieur) approuvé pour l'émetteur par Industrie Canada. Dans le but de réduire les risques de brouillage radioélectrique à l'intention des autres utilisateurs, il faut choisir le type d'antenne et son gain de sorte que la puissance isotrope rayonnée équivalente (p.i.r.e.) ne dépasse pas l'intensité nécessaire à l'établissement d'une communication satisfaisante.

■ Caution while driving

Do not use the cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your cellular phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Using a Bluetooth® phone



1 Device name
2 Bluetooth® connection status
3 Character deletion
4 Make a call

To display the screen shown above, press  or  on the steering wheel.

Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 5 phones in the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen.

STEP 2



Touch "Yes".

If 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered, a registered device needs to be deleted. (→P. 629)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



When this screen is displayed, operate the Bluetooth® device.

On the Bluetooth® device screen, select the system displayed on the system screen, and register the Bluetooth® device.

For details about operating the Bluetooth® device, see the manual that comes with it.

A passcode is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® phones. Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth® phone's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth® phone according to the confirmation message.

If you want to cancel it, touch "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

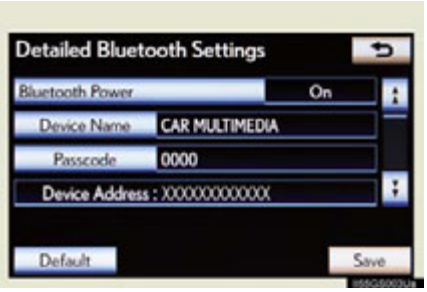
If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available — automatic and manual.

▶ Automatic



When you register your phone, auto connection will be activated. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where connection can be established.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered. The system will connect with the phone that was last connected, if it is nearby.
When "Display Phone Status" is set to "On", the connection status is displayed. (→P. 684)

Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Manual

When the auto connection has failed or "Bluetooth* Power" is turned off, you must connect Bluetooth® manually.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2



Touch "Connect Phone".

STEP 3



Touch the screen button corresponding to the desired phone connection.

When the cellular phone's device name has not been able to be obtained, "Device 1" to "Device 5" will be displayed in the order the phones were registered.

STEP 4



This screen is displayed.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone**

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.
If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, it must be connected manually, or the phone must be re-selected or re-entered.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to connect.

■ **Connecting the phone while another Bluetooth® device is connected**

When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. To disconnect the Bluetooth® device, touch "Yes".

■ **Connecting the phone while 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered**

When 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered, a registered device needs to be deleted. Touch "Yes" to delete one or more.
Touch the device to be deleted, then touch "Remove", and "Yes".

■ **If the Bluetooth® phone has a Bluetooth® audio function**

When the Bluetooth® phone to be registered has a Bluetooth® audio function, this audio function will be registered automatically at the same time and confirmation message may be displayed. If this screen is displayed, touch "Yes" to connect the audio function or touch "No" to cancel the connection.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Making a call

Once the Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

■ Dialing

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2



Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch ← .

STEP 3 Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Dialing from the phonebook

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your cellular phone. The system has one phonebook for each phone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in each phonebook. (→P. 650)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

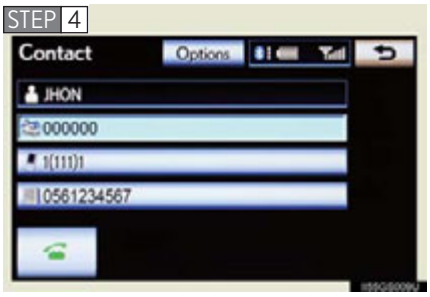
STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3



Choose the desired data to call from the list.

STEP 4



Choose the number and then touch or press on the steering wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the phonebook is empty**

If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the phonebook cannot be transferred.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

▶ PBAP compatible models

STEP 3 Touch "Yes".



▶ PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible models

STEP 3 Touch "Transfer".



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

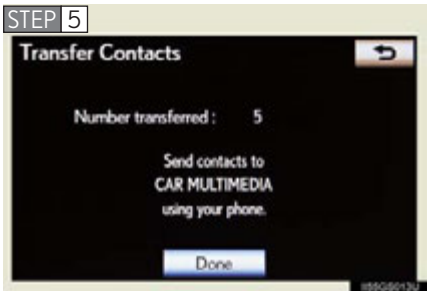
This screen appears while transferring. To cancel this function, touch "Cancel".

Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone:

- It may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone when transferring phonebook data.
- The registered image on the phonebook may not appear when phonebook data is transferred.

Depending on the type of cellular phone, OBEX authentication may be required when transferring phonebook data. Enter "1234" into the Bluetooth® phone.

STEP 5



When the data transfer from a PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible model is complete, "Done" will appear on the screen. Touch "Done".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

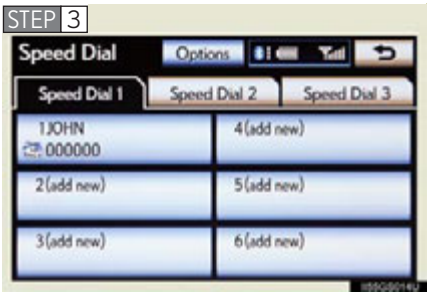
■ Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phonebook. (→P. 650)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3



Touch the desired tab and choose the desired number to make a call.

■ Dialing from history

You can call using the call history which has the 4 functions below.

"All": all the numbers below which were memorized

"Missed": calls which you missed

"Incoming": calls which you received

"Outgoing": numbers which you called

You can call using the 25 most recently called numbers shown by "All" tab while driving.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3



Touch the desired tab and choose the desired data from the list.

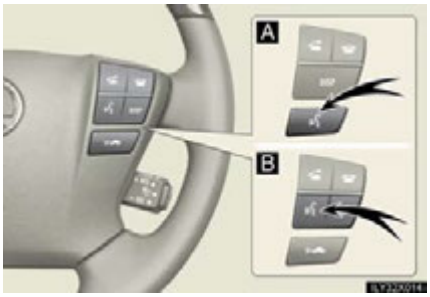
STEP 4



Touch or press on the steering wheel.

Calling using voice recognition

You can call by giving a voice command. (→P. 431)



Talk switch

A Without dynamic radar cruise control

B With dynamic radar cruise control

The “Call <name> <type>” and “Dial <number>” operating procedures are explained here. Other operating procedures are also similar.

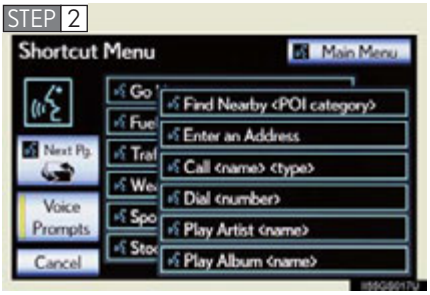
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Calling by name

You can call by giving a name registered in the phonebook.
(→P. 650)

STEP 1 Press  or  .

STEP 2



Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then after saying "Call" say the desired name, or the name and type of phone.

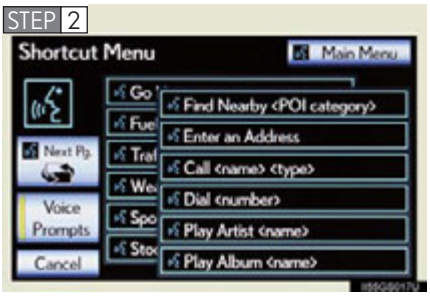
STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say "Dial". (You can also call by pressing  on the steering wheel.)

● Calling by dial number

You can call by giving a phone number

STEP 1 Press  or  .

STEP 2



Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then after saying "Dial" say the phone number.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say "Dial". (You can also call by pressing  on the steering wheel.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Calling using SMS/MMS message

You can call using the SMS (Short Message Service)/MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service) message sender's phone number.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2



Touch "Messages".

When "Message Transfer" is set to "Off", a confirmation screen will be displayed. Touch "Yes".

STEP 3 Touch the "SMS/MMS" tab and then touch the desired received message from the list.

The tab display may vary depending on the type of cellular phone.

STEP 4 Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ Calling using POI

You can make a call using a Point Of Interest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Call history list**

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the call history.
- Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.

■ **When driving**

The functions "Dialing", "Dialing from the phonebook", and "Dialing from history" (except for call using the 25 most recently called numbers shown by "All" tab) are unavailable.

■ **When calling by registered name in the phonebook**

- When "Call <name> <type>" on the "Shortcut Menu" screen is dimmed, the phonebook's voice command recognition cannot be used. Check the Bluetooth® connection and if the contacts have been transferred to the system.
- Short or abbreviated names in the phonebook may not be recognized. Change names in the phonebook to full names.
- Sometimes a voice recognition result confirmation screen will be displayed. After confirming the result, say "Yes" or "No".
- When the system recognizes multiple names from the phonebook, a name candidate list will be displayed on the screen. If the desired name is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the name from the candidate list (number 1 and number 2) to select a name from the candidate list.
- When a contact has multiple phone numbers registered in the phonebook, a candidate list will be displayed. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (number 1 and number 2) to select a phone number from the candidate list.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When calling by phone number**

- Say the phone number one digit at a time. For example, if the phone number is 2345678, say "two three four five six seven eight".
- The system can recognize the following types of phone numbers:
  - 3 digit numbers (911, 411, 611)
  - 7 digit numbers (Local phone numbers)
  - 10 digit numbers (Area code + Local phone number)
  - 11 digit phone numbers (1 + Area code + Local phone number)
- As the system cannot recognize additional numbers, say the complete number without stopping.
- When the system recognizes multiple phone numbers, a phone number candidate list will be displayed on the screen. If the desired phone number is not displayed on the top of the screen, say the number of the desired phone number from the candidate list (number 1 and number 2) to select a phone number from the candidate list

■ **International calls**

To dial a phone number that is not a 3, 7, 10 or 11 digit number, for example an international number, use "International Call".

STEP 1 Press  or  on the steering wheel to display the "Shortcut Menu" screen and saying "Main menu" or touch "Main Menu".

STEP 2 Say "Use a phone".

STEP 3 Say "International call".

Up to 24 digits can be recognized when using the international call function. The number can also be divided into multiple groups and recognized.

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the cellular phone in use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Calling by using the latest call history item**

STEP 1 Press  on the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.

STEP 2 Press  on the steering wheel to display the "Call History" screen.

STEP 3 Press  on the steering wheel to select the most recent number in the history.

STEP 4 Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ **To cancel voice recognition**

- Press and hold  or  on the steering wheel.
- Touch "Cancel".

■ **When using voice recognition**

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch or press on the steering wheel.

To refuse a call

Touch or press on the steering wheel.

To adjust the incoming call volume

Touch "-" or "+", turn the "PWR•VOL" knob, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel.

International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly depending on the cellular phone in use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



To adjust the incoming call volume

Touch "-" or "+", turn the "PWR•VOL" knob, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel.

To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Touch "Mute".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phonebook.

STEP 1 Touch "0-9" on the "Call" screen.

STEP 2



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phonebook, "Send" and "Clear" are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133w0123p#1*)

STEP 3 Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch "Send".

If you touch "Clear", this function will end.

To transfer a call

Touch "Handset Mode" to change from hands-free call to cellular phone call. Touch "Handsfree Mode" to change from cellular phone call to hands-free call.

To hang up

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Call waiting

When a connected call is interrupted by the third party, the incoming call message will be displayed.

- To talk with the other party: Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.
- To refuse the call: Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Everytime you touch  or press  on the steering wheel after a call is interrupted, you will be switched to the other party.

If your cellular phone is not accepted in HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.

Incoming call

- The ring tone that has been set in the "Phone Sound Settings" screen sounds when there is an incoming call. (→P. 649)
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone, both the system and Bluetooth® phone may sound simultaneously when there is an incoming call.

Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to a cellular phone while driving.
- If you transfer from a cellular phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the cellular phone used.
- For operation of the cellular phone in use, see the phone's manual.

Repeated tone symbols

When the "p" pause tone is used, after waiting 2 seconds the tone data up until the next pause tone will be automatically sent. When the "w" pause tone is used, the tone data up until the next pause tone will be automatically sent after user operation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **While driving**

Key input is unavailable.

■ **Voice recognition during a call**

"Send Tones" can be operated by voice recognition. (→P. 635)

■ **Interrupt call operation**

Interrupt call operation may differ from depending on your phone company and the cellular phone.

Using a Bluetooth® phone message

Received messages can be forwarded from the connected Bluetooth® phone, enabling checking and replying (Quick reply).

■ Checking a message

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Messages" on the "Phone" screen.

Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, it may be necessary to perform additional steps on the phone.

When "Message Transfer" is set to "Off", a confirmation screen will be displayed. Touch "Yes".

STEP 3



Touch the desired message to check.

The text of the message is not displayed while driving.
Touching "Previous" or "Next" displays the previous or next message.

STEP 4 Touch "Play" to start reading out of the message. Touch "Stop" to stop the function.

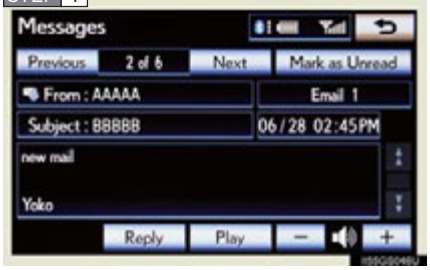
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **To adjust the message reading out volume**

Touch "-" or "+", turn the "PWR•VOL" knob, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel.

■ **Replying a message (Quick reply)**

STEP 1



Touch "Reply" on the desired message screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired message. Touch "Send".

While the message is being sent, a sending message screen is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ To check the message

- Messages are displayed in the appropriate connected Bluetooth® phone's registered mail address folder. Touch the tab of the desired folder to be displayed.
- Only received messages on the connected Bluetooth® phone can be displayed.
- When the received message is an e-mail and "Update Message Read Status on Phone" is set to "On", "Mark as Unread" or "Mark as Read" can be selected. Touch "Mark as Unread" to mark mails that have been read on the Bluetooth® phone as unread. Conversely, touch "Mark as Read" to mark mails that have not been read on the Bluetooth® phone as read. (→P. 666)

■ Calling using SMS/MMS message

You can call using the SMS (Short Message Service)/MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service) message sender's phone number. (→P. 637)

■ If the message delivery failed

If message delivery has failed, a notification will be displayed on the screen.

Touch "Retry" to attempt to send the message again or touch "Cancel" to cancel.

■ Editing a quick reply message

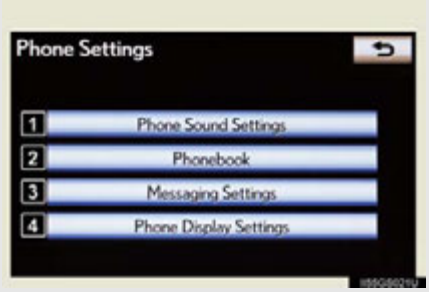
You can edit the "Quick Reply Messages". (→P. 668)

■ New message notification

If "New Message Pop-up" and "New Message Voice Notification" are set to "On", a notification appears on the screen and a voice notification will be heard when a new message arrives, touch "Read" to check the message, also to check the message later, touch "Ignore". When "Automatic Message Readout" is set to "On", the message will be automatically read out. (→P. 666)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can set the hands-free system to your desired settings.



1 Phone sound settings
2 Phonebook settings
3 Message settings
4 Phone display settings

To display the screen shown above, press the "SETUP" button, and touch "Phone" on the "Setup" screen.

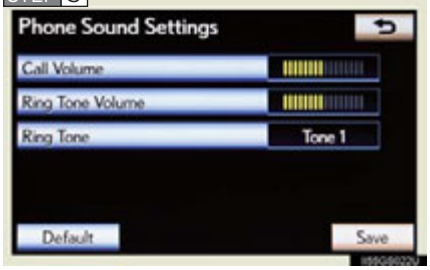
Phone sound settings

■ Setting the volume

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Phone Sound Settings" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



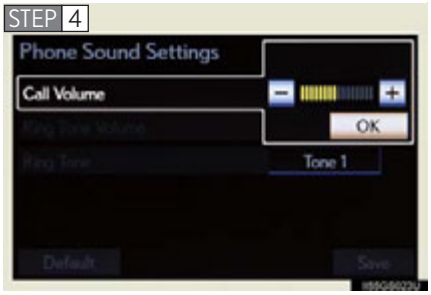
Choose the volume setting switch.

"Call Volume": changes the speaker volume

"Ring Tone Volume": changes the ring tone volume

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



Touch "-" or "+" to lower or raise the volume, and then touch "OK".

STEP 5 When you complete all settings, touch "Save".

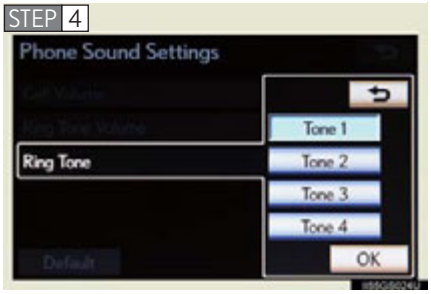
■ Setting the ring tone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 648)

STEP 2 Touch "Phone Sound Settings" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Ring Tone" on the "Phone Sound Settings" screen.

STEP 4



Touch the screen button corresponding to the desired ring tone.

Ring tones can be heard by touching the screen buttons, and then touch "OK".

STEP 5 When you complete setting, touch "Save".

■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume.

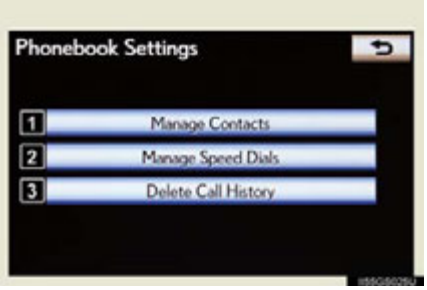
■ To return to the default phone sound settings

Touch "Default", and then touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Phonebook settings

The phonebook manages a maximum of 5 phonebooks in total. The data for 1000 contacts (up to 3 numbers per contact) can be registered in each phonebook.



1 Setting the phonebook
2 Setting the speed dials
3 Deleting the call history

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button, and touch "Phone" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Phonebook" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Setting the phonebook

● Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system. Operation methods differ between PBAP compatible and PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth® phones. If your cellular phone is neither PBAP nor OPP compatible, the phonebook cannot be transferred.

▶ For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Transfer Contacts".

STEP 4



Touch "Update Contacts".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5



Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

This operation may be unnecessary depending on the cellular phone model.

Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone:

- OBEX authentication may be required when transferring phonebook data. Enter "1234" into the Bluetooth® phone.
- The registered image on the phonebook may not appear when phonebook data is transferred.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, touch "Cancel".

▶ PBAP compatible models automatic data transfer setting

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Transfer Contacts" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4



Touch the item to be set.

"Automatically Download Contacts": Transfer the phonebook from a connected cellular phone.

"Automatically Download Call History": transfer the call history from a connected cellular phone.

Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone, the registered image on the phonebook may not

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

appear when phonebook data is transferred.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5



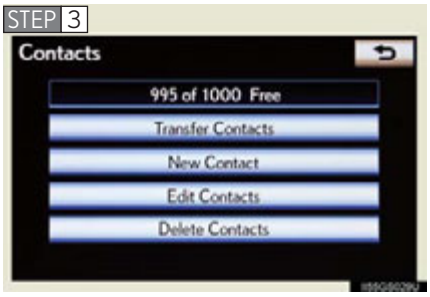
Touch "On", and then touch "Save".

▶ For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth® phones

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

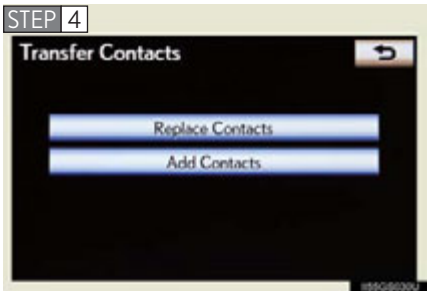
STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Transfer Contacts".

STEP 4



Touch "Replace Contacts" or "Add Contacts".

In the case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5



Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

Depending on the type of cellular phone, OBEX authentication may be required when transferring phonebook data. Enter "1234" into the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, touch "Cancel".

If "Add Contacts" is touched and there is an interruption during the transfer of data, the phonebook data transferred until then will be stored in the system. Please note, this is not the case when "Cancel" is touched.

This operation may be unnecessary depending on the type of cellular phone.

STEP 6 When the transfer is complete, "Done" will appear on the screen. Touch "Done".

● Registering the phonebook data

You can register the phonebook data. Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered. New phonebook data cannot be added for PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "New Contact" on the "Contacts" screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



Input the name, and touch "OK".

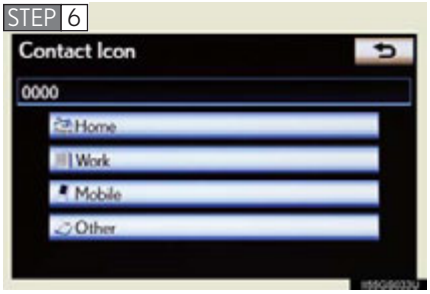
STEP 5



Input the phone number, and touch "OK".

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.

STEP 6



Touch the desired phone type.

STEP 7 When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, this screen is displayed. When you want to add a number to this contact, touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Editing the phonebook data

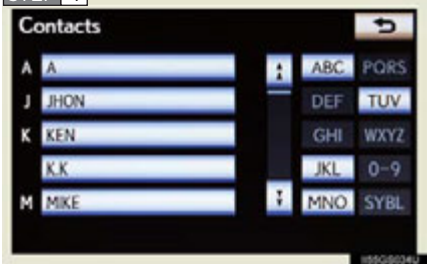
You can register the phone number separately. Phonebooks cannot be edited for PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Edit Contacts" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5



Touch the desired name or number.

STEP 6 Edit the name or number. After editing, touch "Save".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

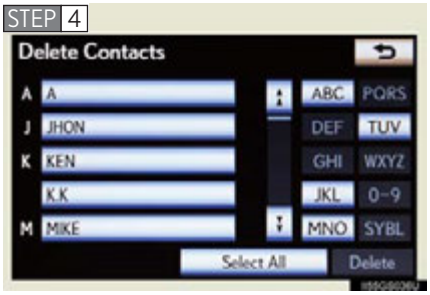
● Deleting the phonebook data

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **Phonebook data**

Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

When selling or disposing of the vehicle, delete all your data on the system.
For PBAP compatible phones, delete the phonebook data after setting “Automatically Download Contacts” to “Off”. (→P. 652)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Setting the phonebook in a different way (To display the "Contacts" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Contacts" screen.

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected during transferring a phonebook**

- For PBAP compatible Bluetooth® phones
  If another Bluetooth® device is connected when transferring phonebook data, depending on the phone, the connected Bluetooth® device may need to be disconnected.
- For PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible Bluetooth® phones
  When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **Transferring the phone number data in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Transfer" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 The "Transfer Contacts" screen is displayed. The following operations are performed in the same manner as when they are performed from the "Setup" screen.

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way**

- From "Contact" screen

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Edit" on the "Contact" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 656)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● From “Call History” screen

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Call History” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch “Add to Contacts” or “Update Contact” on the “Call History” screen.

STEP 5 If you touch “Add to Contacts”, follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from “STEP5”. (→P. 656)
If you touch “Update Contact”, follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from “STEP4”. (→P. 656)

■ **Deleting the phonebook data in a different way (PBAP incompatible but OPP compatible models)**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch “Options” on the “Contact” screen.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete” on the “Contact” screen.

STEP 6 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **When a Bluetooth® phone is deleted.**

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the speed dials

■ Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from the phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

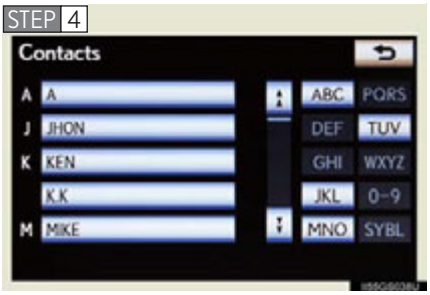
STEP 2 Touch "Manage Speed Dials" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "New".

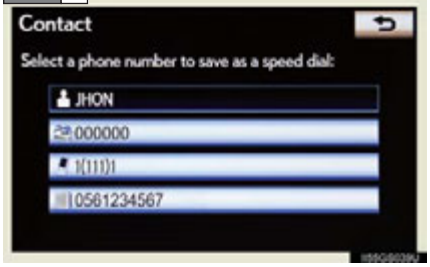
STEP 4



Choose the data to register.

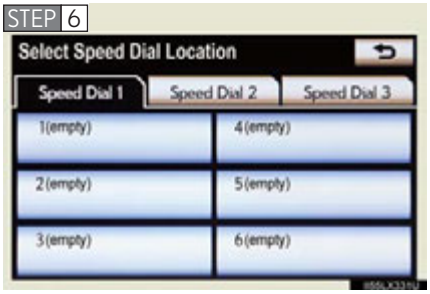
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5



Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 6



Touch the switch you want to register the number in.

STEP 7 If you select a switch you registered before, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to replace it, touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

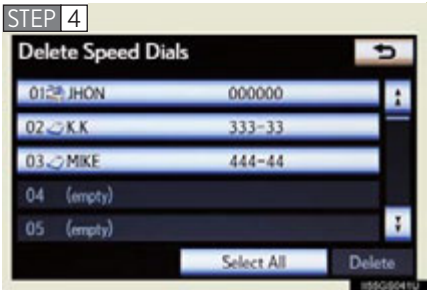
■ Deleting the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete” on the “Speed Dials” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ Setting the speed dials in a different way

● To display the “Speed Dials” screen

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Speed Dials” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Speed Dial” screen.

● To display the “Contacts” screen

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Contacts” screen.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way**

● From “Speed Dial” screen

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Speed Dials” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “(add new)” on the “Speed Dial” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Yes” to set new speed dial.

STEP 5 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 7 Follow the steps “Registering the speed dial” from “STEP6”. (→P. 660)

● From “Contact” screen

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch “Options” on the “Contact” screen.

STEP 5 Touch “Set Speed Dial” on the “Contact” screen.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 7 Follow the steps “Registering the speed dial” from “STEP6”. (→P. 660)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Deleting call history

The call history can be deleted. For PBAP compatible phones, delete the call history after setting "Automatically Download Call History" to "Off". (→P. 652)

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 650)

STEP 2 Touch "Delete Call History" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Choose the desired history to delete.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Deleting call history in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Call History” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete” on the “Call History” screen.

STEP 4 Follow the steps “Deleting call history” from “STEP4”. (→P. 664)

■ **Deleting after call history has been displayed**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch “Call History” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch the desired history to delete.

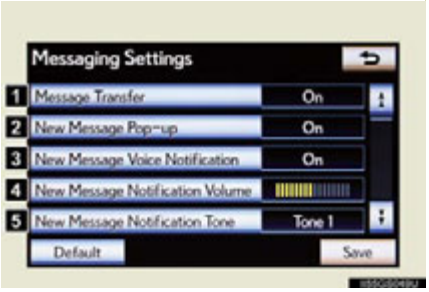
STEP 4 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

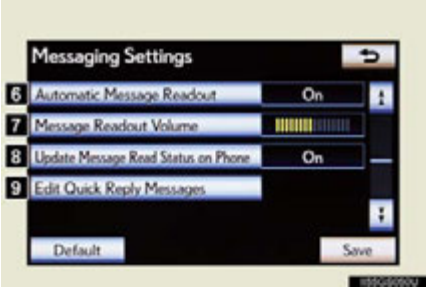
Message settings

You can change the message settings.

▶ Page 1



▶ Page 2



1 Message forwarding from cellular phone on/off
2 New message notification display on/off
3 New message voice notification on/off
4 Changing new message notification volume
5 Changing new message voice notification tone
6 Automatic message read out function on/off
7 Changing a message read out volume
8 Cellular phone's message read and unread status update function on/off
9 Editing "Edit Quick Reply Messages"

Depending on the phone, these functions may not be available.

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button, and touch "Phone" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Messaging Settings" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

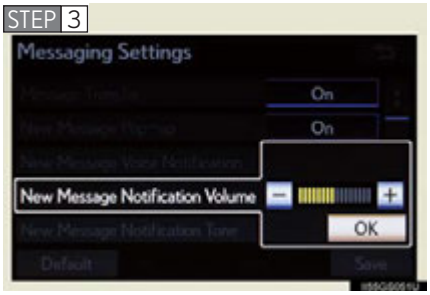
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing the new message notification volume

STEP 1 Display the "Messaging Settings" screen. (→P. 666)

STEP 2 Touch "New Message Notification Volume" on the "Messaging Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "-" or "+" to lower or raise the volume, and then touch "OK".

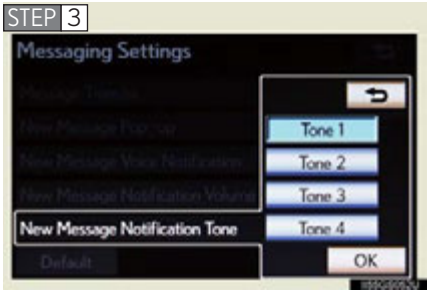
STEP 4 When you complete setting, touch "Save".

■ Changing the new message notification tone

STEP 1 Display the "Messaging Settings" screen. (→P. 666)

STEP 2 Touch "New Message Notification Tone" on the "Messaging Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch the desired new message notification tone.

New message notification tones can be heard by touching the screen buttons, and then touch "OK".

STEP 4 When you complete setting, touch "Save".

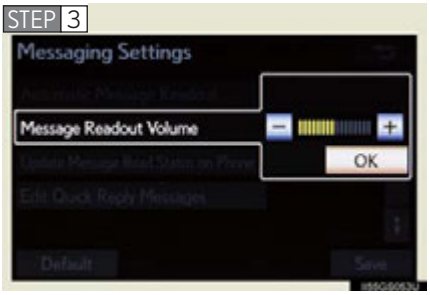
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing the message read out volume

STEP 1 Display the "Messaging Settings" screen. (→P. 666)

STEP 2 Touch "Message Readout Volume" on the "Messaging Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "-" or "+" to lower or raise the volume, and then touch "OK".

STEP 4 When you complete setting, touch "Save".

■ Editing the quick reply messages

Quick reply messages can be edited. 15 messages have already been stored.

STEP 1 Display the "Messaging Settings" screen. (→P. 666)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit Quick Reply Messages" on the "Messaging Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch the screen button corresponding to the desired message.

STEP 4 Edit the message. After editing, touch "OK" and then touch "Save".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **To display the "Message settings" screen in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 625)

STEP 2 Touch "Messages" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Messages" screen.

■ **Editing the quick reply messages in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the desired message on "Messages" screen. (→P. 645)

STEP 2 Touch "Reply" on the desired message screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Edit" on the "Quick Reply Messages".

STEP 4 Touch the screen button corresponding to the desired message.

STEP 5 When you complete editing, touch "OK" and then touch on the "Edit Quick Reply Message" screen.

■ **Adaptive volume control**

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume.

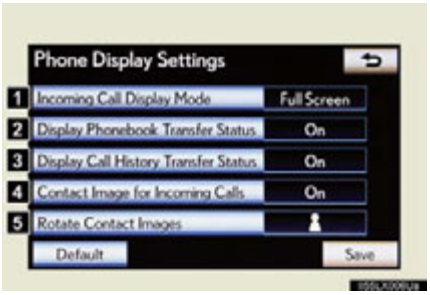
■ **To return to the default message settings**

Touch "Default", and then touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Phone display settings

Depending on the phone, this function may not be available even if the phone is PBAP compatible.



1 Changing the incoming call display mode
2 Changing the display phonebook transfer status on/off*
3 Changing the display call history transfer status on/off*
4 Changing the contact image during incoming call on/off*
5 Changing the rotate contact image*

*: For PBAP compatible models

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button, and touch "Phone" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Phone Display Settings" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

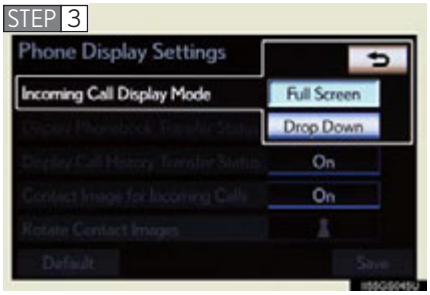
Changing the incoming call display mode

You can select the method of the incoming call display.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Display Settings" screen. (→P. 670)

STEP 2 Touch "Incoming Call Display Mode" on the "Phone Display Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Full Screen" or "Drop Down", and touch "Save".

"Full Screen":
The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

"Drop Down":
A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing the rotating contact images

For PBAP compatible models, when "Contact Image for Incoming Calls" is set to "On", images stored together with phone numbers in the cellular phone's phonebook will be transferred and displayed during the incoming call. The orientation of the image can be set.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Display Settings" screen. (→P. 670)

STEP 2 Touch "Rotate Contact Images" on the "Phone Display Settings" screen.

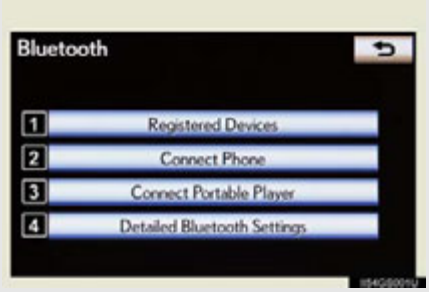
STEP 3 Choose the desired orientation of the image to be displayed, and then touch "Save".

■ To return to the default detailed phone settings

Touch "Default", and then touch "Yes".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.



1 Registered Devices
2 Connect Phone
3 Connect Portable Player
4 Detailed Bluetooth® settings

To display the screen shown above, press the "SETUP" button, touch "Bluetooth*" on the "Setup" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Registered devices

■ Registering a Bluetooth® devices

Bluetooth® devices compatible with phones (HFP) and portable players (AVP) can be registered simultaneously. Phones (HFP) and portable players (AVP) (maximum of 5) can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth*" screen. (→P. 673)

STEP 2 Touch "Registered Devices" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Add New" to register a Bluetooth® device to the system.

When 5 Bluetooth® devices have already been registered, a registered device needs to be deleted.
Touch "Yes" to delete one or more. Touch the device to be deleted, then touch "Remove", and then touch "Yes".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



When this screen is displayed, operate the Bluetooth® device.

On the Bluetooth® device screen, select the system displayed on the system screen, and register the Bluetooth® device.

For details about operating the Bluetooth® device, see the manual that comes with it.

A passcode is not required for SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® devices. Depending on the type of Bluetooth® phone being connected, a message confirming registration may be displayed on the Bluetooth® phone's screen. Respond and operate the Bluetooth® phone according to the confirmation message.

If you want to cancel it, touch "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

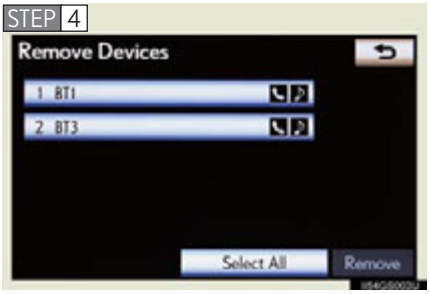
■ Removing a Bluetooth® device

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth*" screen. (→P. 673)

STEP 2 Touch "Registered Devices" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Remove" on the "Registered Devices" screen.

STEP 4



Choose the desired device.

You can select multiple device and delete them at the same time.
To remove all devices, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Remove". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Editing a Bluetooth® device

You can see the information of the Bluetooth® device on the system or edit.

● Changing a device name

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth*" screen. (→P. 673)

STEP 2 Touch "Registered Devices" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

STEP 3

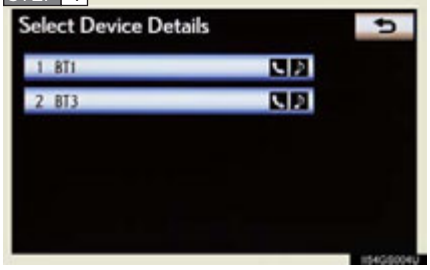


Touch "Details".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



Touch the device to be edited.

STEP 5



Touch “Device Name”.

STEP 6



Input the device name, and touch “OK”.

STEP 7 Confirm the device name and touch “OK”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

● Setting portable player connection method

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth*" screen. (→P. 673)

STEP 2 Touch "Registered Devices" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Details" on the "Registered Devices" screen.

STEP 4 Touch the device to be edited.

STEP 5



Touch "Connect Portable Player from".

STEP 6



Touch the desired connection method, and touch "OK".

"Vehicle":
Touch to connect the audio system to the portable player.
"Portable Player":
Touch to connect the portable player to the audio system.

Depending on the portable player, the "Vehicle" or "Portable Player" connection method may be best. As such, refer to the manual that comes with the portable player.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Editing the "Device Name"**

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

■ **About "Device Address"**

The address peculiar to the system. It cannot be changed. If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to this address.

■ **"My Phone Number":**

The phone number of the Bluetooth® phone is displayed on the screen. Depending on the type of phone, the phone number may not be displayed.

■ **"Profiles":**

The compatibility profile of the Bluetooth® device is displayed on the screen.

■ **"Connect Portable Player from":**

There are 2 portable player connection settings available; "Vehicle" and "Portable Player".

■ **When you delete a Bluetooth® phone**

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

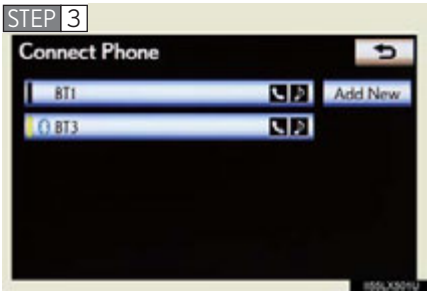
Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You can only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth*" screen. (→P. 673)

STEP 2 Touch "Connect Phone" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

STEP 3



Choose the phone to be connected.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ When another Bluetooth® device is connected during registering or selecting a phone

- When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".
- The currently connected Bluetooth® phone's screen button will have a Bluetooth® mark displayed on it. If the currently connected Bluetooth® phone's screen button is touched, the Bluetooth® phone can be disconnected. Touch "Yes" to disconnect.

■ Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

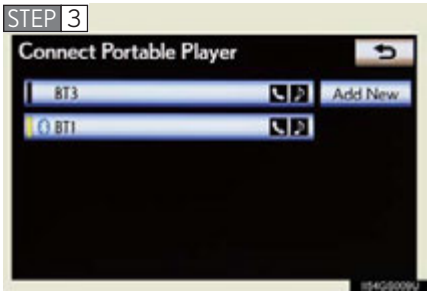
Selecting a portable player

If multiple portable players are registered, follow the procedure below to select the portable player phone to be used. You can only use one portable player at a time.

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth*" screen. (→P. 673)

STEP 2 Touch "Connect Portable Player" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

STEP 3



Choose the portable player to be used.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the portable player.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ When another Bluetooth® device is connected during registering or selecting a portable player

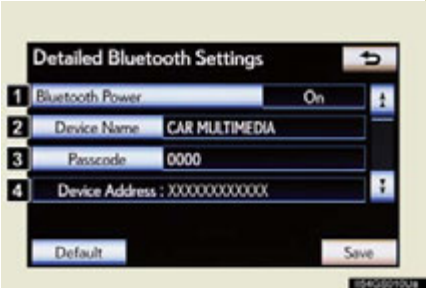
- When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".
- The currently connected portable player's screen button will have a Bluetooth® mark displayed on it. If the currently connected portable player's screen button is touched, the portable player can be disconnected. Touch "Yes" to disconnect.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Detailed Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.

▶ Page 1



1 Changing the device connection status

2 Changing the name of the connected device.

3 Changing the passcode that you registered your Bluetooth® device in the system

4 The address peculiar to the system

You cannot change this address. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your device, refer to it.

▶ Page 2



5 The compatibility profile of the Bluetooth® device

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button, and touch "Bluetooth*" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 2 Touch "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" on the "Bluetooth*" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing Bluetooth* power

The Bluetooth* device is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. You can change between "On" or "Off".

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen. (→P. 682)

STEP 2 Touch "Bluetooth* Power" on the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "On" or "Off", and then touch "Save".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Editing the device name

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen. (→P. 682)

STEP 2 Touch "Device Name" on the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Input the device name, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

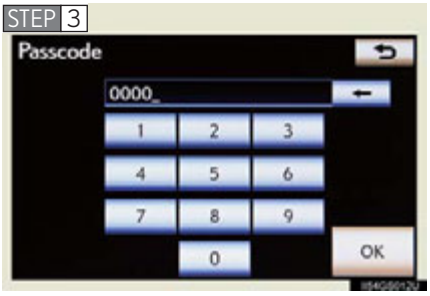
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Editing the passcode

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen. (→P. 682)

STEP 2 Touch "Passcode" on the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Input a passcode, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Bluetooth® device connection status display settings

When "Bluetooth* Power" is "On" and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the Bluetooth® phone and portable player's connection status can be displayed. (→P. 683)

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen. (→P. 682)

STEP 2 Touch "Display Phone Status" or "Display Portable Player Status" on the "Detailed Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "On", and then touch "Save".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **While driving**

You cannot change the state of "Bluetooth* Power" from "On" to "Off" while driving, but it can be changed from "Off" to "On".

■ **To return to the default Bluetooth® settings**

Touch "Default", and then touch "Yes".

If the state of "Bluetooth* Power" is changed from "Off" to "On", Bluetooth® connection will begin.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior lights list



1 Rear interior light (→P. 687)
2 Rear personal lights (→ P. 688)
3 Inside door handle light
4 Shift lever light (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)
5 Front interior lights (→P. 687)
6 Front personal lights (→P. 688)
7 Footwell lights
8 Scuff lights (if equipped)
9 "ENGINE START STOP" switch light
10 Door courtesy light
11 Luggage compartment light (→P. 689)
12 Outer foot lights
13 Running board lights

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

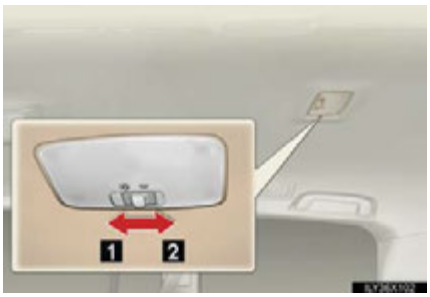
Interior lights

▶ Front



1 "OFF"
2 Door position on/off
3 "ON"

▶ Rear



1 Door position
2 On

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

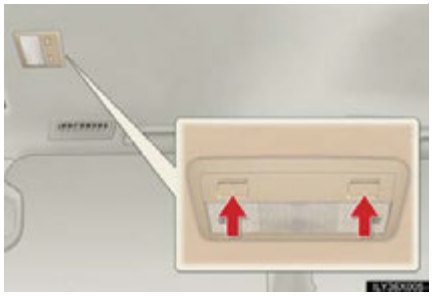
Personal lights

▶ Front



On/off

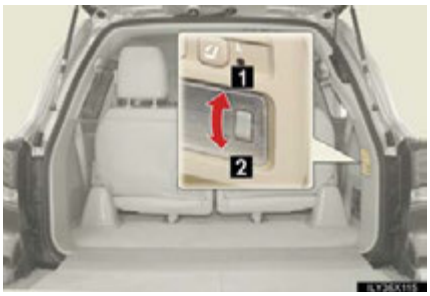
▶ Rear



On/off

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Luggage compartment light



1 Off
2 Door position

Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

To prevent battery discharge

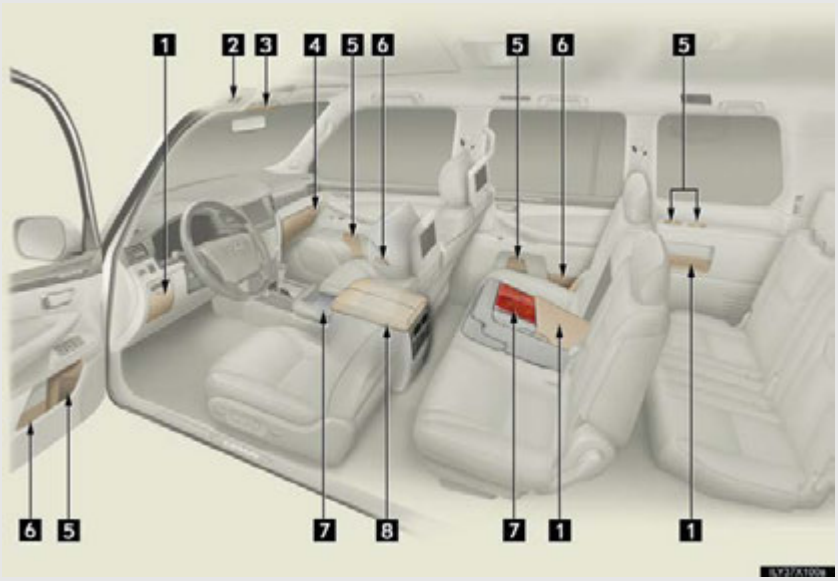
If the interior lights remain on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

Customization

Settings (e.g. Time period before the interior lights turn off.) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 912)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

List of storage features



1 Auxiliary boxes
2 Card holder
3 Overhead console
4 Glove box
5 Bottle holders
6 Door pockets
7 Cup holders
8 Console box
Cool box

CAUTION

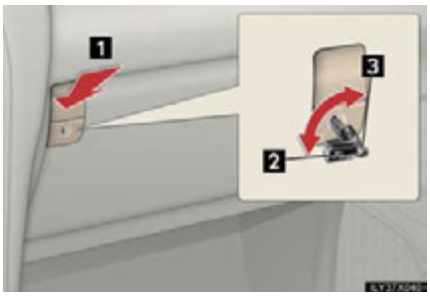
Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Glove box

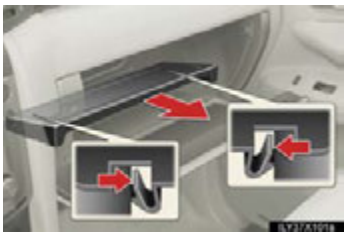


1 Open (push button)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Removing the separate tray



Pull out the separate tray.

CAUTION

While driving

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Console box (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with either a console box or cool box.

For vehicles with the cool box, refer to page 699.

STEP 1



Lift the lid while pulling up the lower lever to release the lock.

STEP 2



Remove the tray.

CAUTION

While driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Overhead console



Press the button.

The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing small items.

CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for storing

Do not store items heavier than 0.4 lb (0.2 kg).
Doing so may cause the overhead console to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

■ While driving

Do not leave the overhead console open.
Items may fall out and cause injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cup holders

▶ Front (type A)



Press down and release the lid.

You can adjust or remove the holder inside.

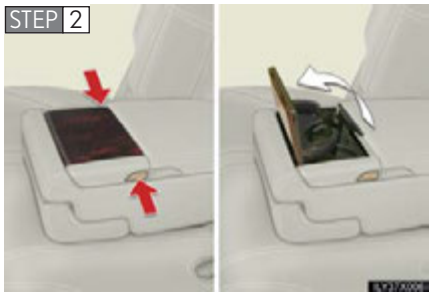
▶ Front (if equipped with type B)



Open the lower console box lid.

▶ Rear

STEP 1 Pull the rear armrest down. (→P. 712)



STEP 2 Press the button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Removing the holder (front cup holders type A)



Pull up the holder.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Items unsuitable for the cup holders**

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

⚠ NOTICE

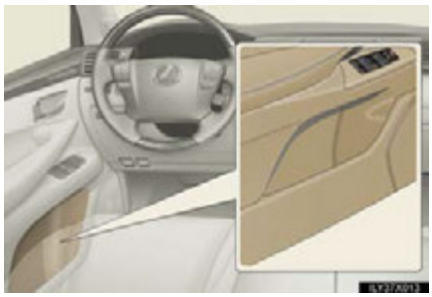
■ **To prevent damage to the cup holders**

Stow the cup holders before stowing the rear armrest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Bottle holders

▶ Front seats



▶ Second seats



▶ Third seats



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Items that should not be stowed in the bottle holders**

Put the cap on before stowing a bottle. Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders, or glasses and paper cups containing liquid. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Card holder



Auxiliary boxes

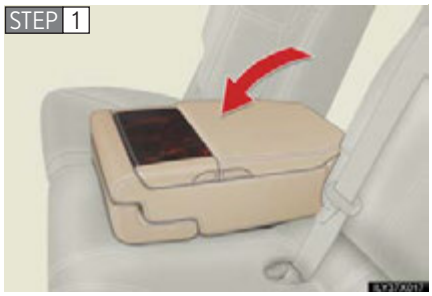
▶ Front seats



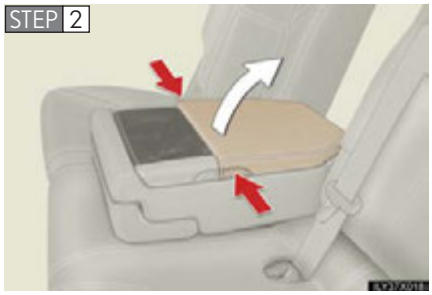
Press and release the lid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Second seats



Pull down the armrest.



Press the button to release the lock.

▶ Third seats



CAUTION

While driving

Except for the third seats: Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items stored in it may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cool box*

While the engine is running, the cool box, which is cooled by the air conditioning, can be used.

STEP 1



Lift the lid while pulling up the lower lever to release the lock.

STEP 2



On/off

When on, the indicator light comes on.

If the front air conditioning system is not in use, the front air conditioning system is automatically turned on when the cool box is turned on.

■ **While the cool box is on**

The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off.

■ **When the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below**

The cool box may not operate.

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Keep the cool box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

NOTICE

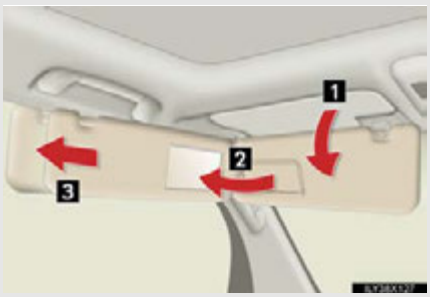
■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the cool box on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sun visors

▶ Main sun visor

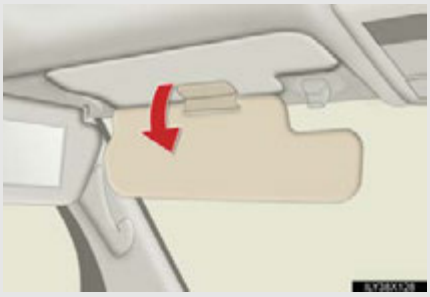


1 Forward position:
Flip down.

2 Side position:
Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.

3 Side extender:
Place in side position, then slide backwards.

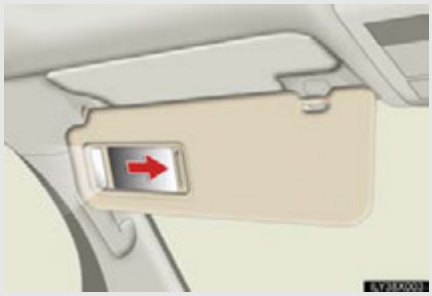
▶ Sub-sun visor



Flip down with the main sun visor in position 2 or 3.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vanity mirrors



Slide the cover.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ashtrays

▶ Front



Push the front part of the lid to open. Push the lid again to close.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

▶ Rear



Pull the ashtray lid to open.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cigarette lighter



Push the front part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

The cigarette lighter can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

CAUTION

To avoid burns or fires

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Power outlets

The power outlet can be used for the following components:

12 V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A
120 V AC: Accessories that use less than 100 W

▶ Front (12 V)



▶ Rear (12V)



▶ Luggage compartment (120 V AC)



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The power outlet can be used when**

▶ **12 V**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ **120 V AC**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

▶ **12 V**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

▶ **120 V AC**

Do not use a 120 V AC appliance that requires more than 100 W.
If a 120 V AC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (120 V AC)**

The following 120 V AC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W:

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel can be used to heat the leather portion of the steering wheel.



On/Off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

■ **The heated steering wheel can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Timer**

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

■ **If the indicator light flashes**

Press the switch to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the switch again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns

- Only appropriately qualified and capable non-impaired persons should operate the vehicle. However, care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes into contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not use the heated steering wheel more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

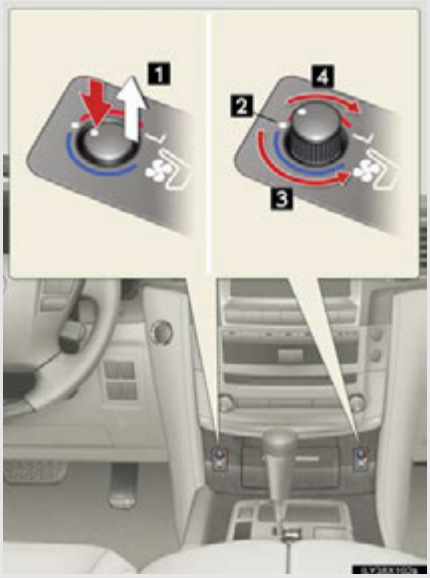
Turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat heaters and ventilators

The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.

■ Front seat heaters/ventilators (if equipped)



1 Press the knob to release it.

Press the knob back in when finished adjusting the temperature or the seat air flow.

2 Off

3 Blows air from the seat

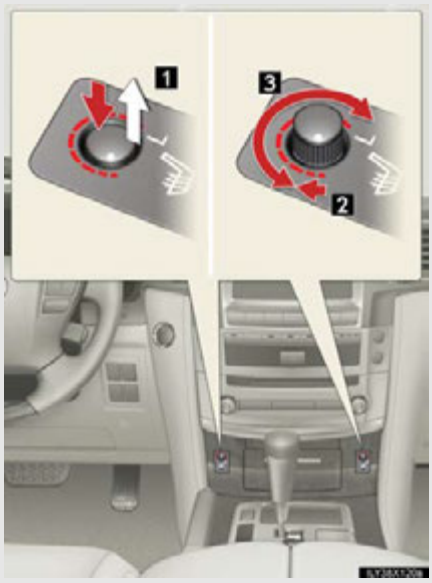
The further you turn the knob counterclockwise, the stronger the airflow becomes.

4 Turns the seat heater on

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat becomes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front seat heaters



1 Press the knob to release it.

Press the knob back in when finished adjusting the temperature.

2 On

3 Adjusts the seat temperature

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat becomes.

Second seat heaters (if equipped)



1 For left second seat

2 For right second seat

3 High heating temperature

4 Low heating temperature

To turn on the seat heater, press "HI" or "LO".
The indicator light on "HI" or "LO" switch indicates that the seat heater is on.

5 Off

To turn off, press "OFF".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The seat heaters and ventilators can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Replacing the air filters**

Filters are installed in the seat ventilators. For replacement of the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Burns**

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater. Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use the seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the seat heaters and ventilators**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Turn the seat heaters and ventilators off when the engine is not running.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

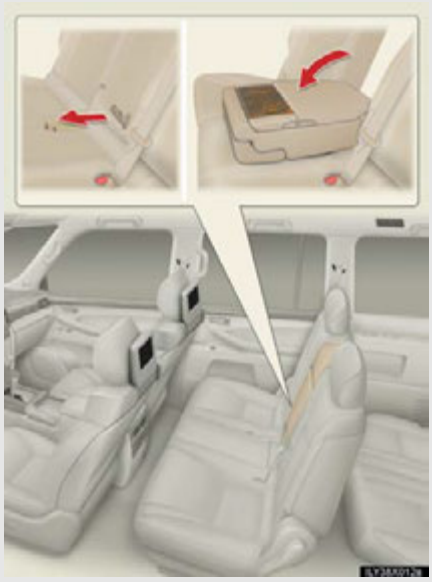
Armrest

▶ Front



Lift the lid while pulling up the upper lever to release the lock.

▶ Rear



Fold down the armrest while pulling the strap.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the armrest**

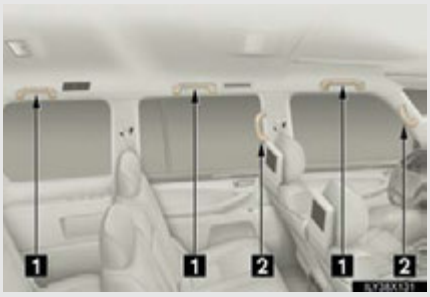
Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Assist grips

An assist grip (Type A) installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.

An assist grip (Type B) installed on the pillar can be used when getting in or out of the vehicle and others.



1 Assist grip (Type A)
2 Assist grip (Type B)

CAUTION

■ **Assist grip (Type A)**

Do not use the assist grip (Type A) when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the assist grip**

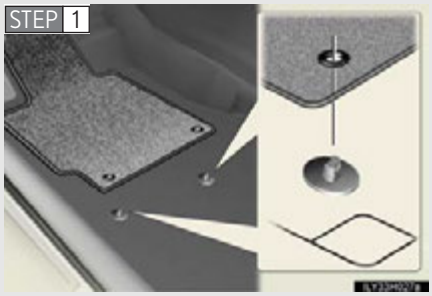
Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Floor mats

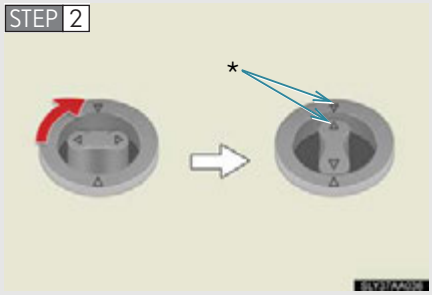
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

STEP 1



Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.

STEP 2



Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving



- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in "P", fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cargo hooks



Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

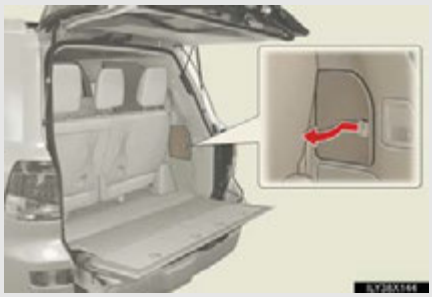
Cargo net hooks



To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks and rear cargo hooks.

The cargo net itself is not included as an original equipment.

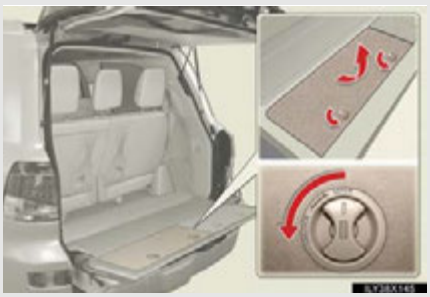
Storage compartment (if equipped)



Remove the cover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning reflector holder



Remove the cover. Hold the warning reflector with the bands.

The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

First-aid kit holder



Remove the cover. Hold the first-aid kit with a band.

The first-aid kit itself is not included as an original equipment.

CAUTION

When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the cargo net hooks

Avoid hanging things other than a cargo net on it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

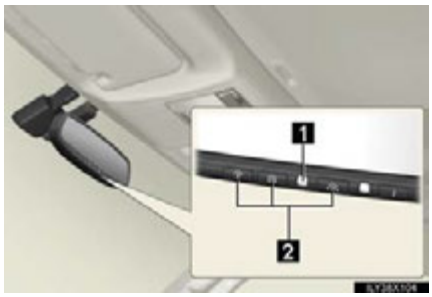
Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

Programming HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



1 Indicator
2 Buttons

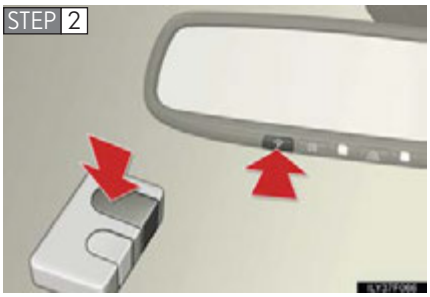
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Programming HomeLink®



Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® buttons.

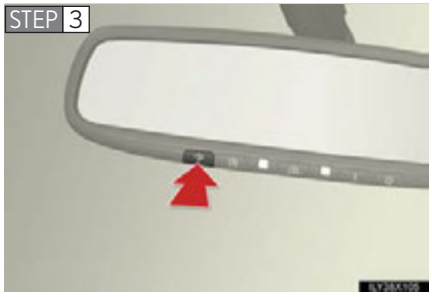
Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.



Press and hold one of the HomeLink® buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

If the HomeLink® indicator light comes on but does not flash, flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink® button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions. (→P. 723)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink® button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Programming a rolling code system**

If your device is rolling code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming HomeLink®" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the learn button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for the location of the learn button.

STEP 2 Press the learn button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

STEP 3 Press and hold the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® signal and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market**

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming other devices**

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ **Reprogramming a button**

The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should come on.

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Reprogramming a HomeLink® button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink® indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink® button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Before programming**

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

■ **Certification for the garage door opener**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID:NZLOBIHL4
FCC ID:NZLWZLHL4

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

■ **When support is necessary**

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When programming a garage door or other remote control devices**

The garage door on other devices may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ **Conforming to federal safety standards**

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Connect*

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

System components



1 Microphone
2 LED light indicators
3 "SOS" button

*: If equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Services**

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

- Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 729)

  *: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2
- Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 730)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 730)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 730)

■ **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Safety Connect Services Information**

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance and Stolen Vehicle Location will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States (except Hawaii) and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ **Languages**

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ **When contacting the response center**

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

■ **Safety Connect backup battery depletion**

An exclusive backup battery is built in to assist the Automatic Collision Notification, which is activated when impact above a certain level is applied to the vehicle, or when the airbags operate. This battery is a primary battery, and cannot be recharged. The red LED indicator will flash to indicate that the battery should be replaced.

The backup battery will need to be replaced if the Automatic Collision Notification operates for 60 seconds or more. For replacement, consult your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.
The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.
Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect**

FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

FCC ID: XOECDMRF101B

FCC ID: N7NGTM2

FCC WARNING:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance and care 4

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 734

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 737

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 740

General maintenance..... 743

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 746

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions..... 747

Hood..... 750

Engine compartment 751

Tires 766

Tire inflation pressure 775

Wheels..... 779

Air conditioning filter 781

Electronic key battery 784

Checking and replacing fuses..... 786

Light bulbs..... 803

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
  Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When cleaning the windshield**



Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ **Caution about the exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ To prevent deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- After driving on salted roads
- If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
- If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

● Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

● Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash

Turn off the wiper switch.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded ventilated area.

Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

⚠ CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 128)

  Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear quarter windows and rear window**

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear quarter windows and rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

General maintenance

General maintenance should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.
Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, refer to the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Repair and replacement**

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ **Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required (U.S.A. only)**

After the required maintenance is performed according to the maintenance schedule, please reset the message.
To reset the data, follow the procedures described below:

STEP 1 Switch the display to the trip meter A when the engine is running. (→P. 192)

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 3 While pressing the trip meter reset button, set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode (but do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the button until the multi-information display indicates that the reset is complete.

■ **Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ Handling of the battery

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 762)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Warranty and Services Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	• Maintenance-free (→P. 762)
Brake fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 759)
Engine coolant	• At the correct level? (→P. 757)
Engine oil	• At the correct level? (→P. 753)
Exhaust system	• No fumes or strange sounds?
Power steering fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 761)
Radiator/condenser/hoses	• Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 758)
Washer fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 765)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism	• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in "P"?
Brake pedal	• Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	• Pulls to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Head restraints	• Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on? • Headlights aimed correctly?
Parking brake	• Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?
Seat belts	• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	• Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors	• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tires	• Is the tire inflation pressure correct? • The tires should not be damaged or excessively worn. • Have the tires been rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • The wheel nuts should not be loose.
Windshield wipers/rear window wiper	• The wiper blades should not show any signs of cracking, splitting, wear, contamination or deformation. • The wiper blades should clear the windshield/rear window without streaking or skipping.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the engine is running

Turn off the engine and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

  Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

  The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 762)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 759)	• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine coolant level (→P. 757)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 753)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)
Fuses (→P. 786)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Power steering fluid (→P. 761)	• Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding power steering fluid)
Light bulbs (→P. 803)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser (→P. 758)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 775)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 765)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 758)

■ When working on or under the vehicle

- Do not get under the vehicle with just the jack supporting it.
  Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.
- Use eye protection to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

STEP 1



Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2



Lift the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

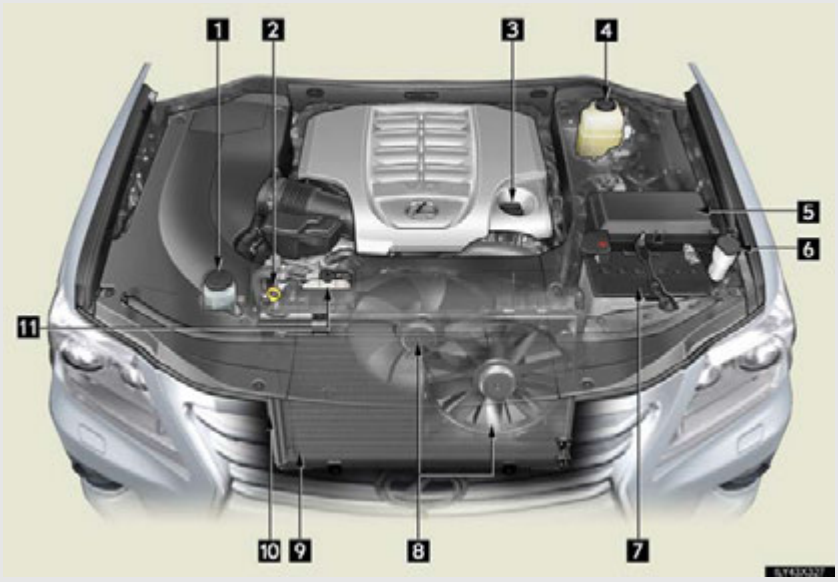
⚠ CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine compartment



1 Power steering fluid reservoir (→P. 761)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 753)
3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 754)
4 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 759)
5 Fuse box (→P. 786)
6 Washer fluid tank (→P. 765)
7 Battery (→P. 762)
8 Cooling fans
9 Condenser (→P. 758)
10 Radiator (→P. 758)
11 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 757)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

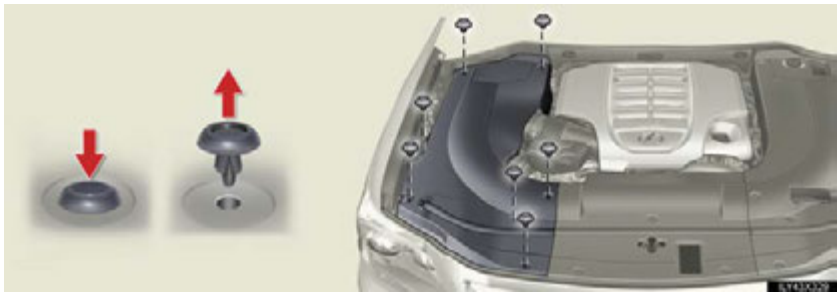
Engine compartment cover

Removing the cover

▶ Front



▶ Right-hand side

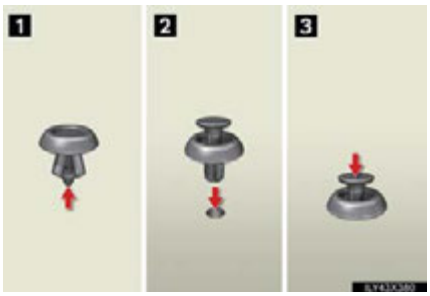


▶ Left-hand side



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing the clips



1 Push up center portion
2 Insert
3 Press

NOTICE

After installing an engine compartment cover

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



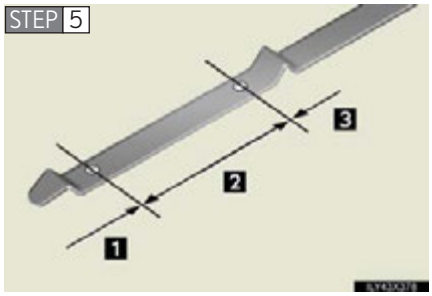
Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5



Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

1 Low

2 Normal

3 Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine. (→P. 889)

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine oil selection	→P. 889
Oil quantity (Low→Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp.qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on regular basis.

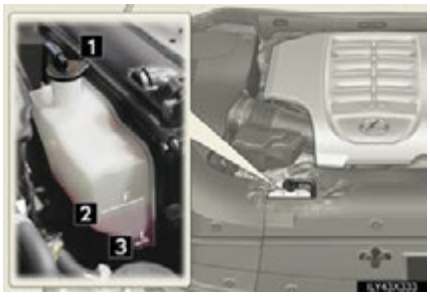
When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, as the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



1 Reservoir cap
2 "F"
3 "L"

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line.

If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, reservoir cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear any foreign objects.
If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake fluid

Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

1 MAX
2 MIN

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Adding fluid

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

Refilling brake fluid

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 Depress the brake pedal more than 40 times.

STEP 3 Remove the reservoir cap by hand. Add brake fluid up to the "MAX" line.

If you do not follow the procedure above, the reservoir may overflow.

Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

NOTICE

■ If the fluid level is low

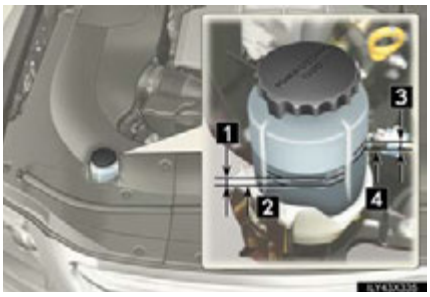
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power steering fluid

Fluid level

The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.



1 Full (when cold)
2 Add fluid (when cold)
3 Full (when hot)
4 Add fluid (when hot)

Hot: Vehicle has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140°F - 175°F [60°C - 80°C]).

Cold: Engine has not been run for about five hours. (Room temperature, 50°F - 85°F [10°C - 30°C]).

Checking the fluid level

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III
Items	Rag or paper, Clean funnel (only for adding fluid)

STEP 1 Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
STEP 2 Remove the cap by turning it counterclockwise.
STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.
STEP 4 Reinstall and remove the reservoir cap again.
STEP 5 Check the fluid level.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

When checking the reservoir

Take care, as the reservoir may be hot.

NOTICE

When adding fluid

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

After replacing the reservoir cap

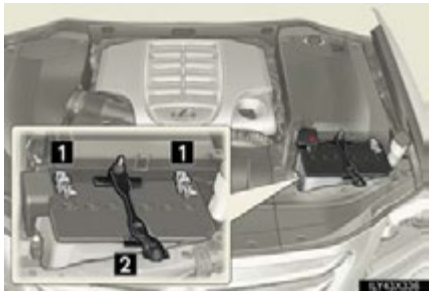
Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

Battery

Check the battery as follows:

Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

STEP 1 Depress the brake pedal with the shift lever in "P" or "N".

STEP 2 Open and close any of the doors.

STEP 3 Restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

CAUTION

When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

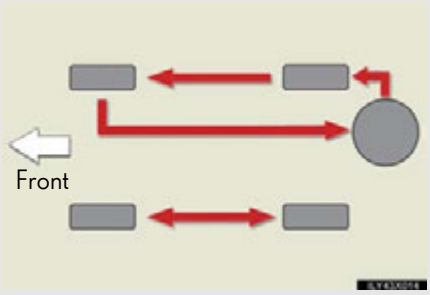


1 New tread
2 Treadwear indicator
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after rotating the tires that the tire pressure has been changed for towing. (→P. 767)

The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 768)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating the tires in above situation.
- When the set tire pressure has been changed before towing. (→P. 895)

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 895)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times and a message appears on the multi-information display.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with the IGNITION ON mode, and then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **When rotating the tires**

Make sure that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off. If the tires are rotated while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the tire position information will not be updated.
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to off and then to IGNITION ON mode, or initialize the system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

■ **Tire life**

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm)**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maximum load of tire

Check that the number given by dividing the maximum load by 1.10 of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.



For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire. (→P. 901)

Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 376)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Initialize the tire pressure warning system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ **If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally**

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

■ **The initialization operation**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Tire pressure warning system certification**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A., Hawaii, Guam and Puerto Rico

FCC ID: PAXPMV107J

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC ID: HYQ13BCX

NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Tire pressure warning system operation

The tire pressure warning system may not provide warning immediately if a tire bursts or if sudden air leakage occurs.

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 767)

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

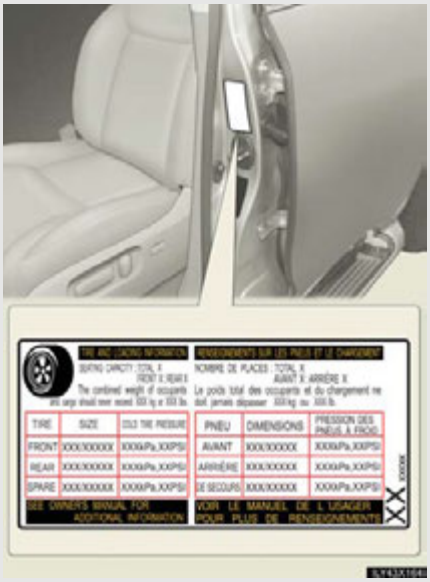
Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire inflation pressure

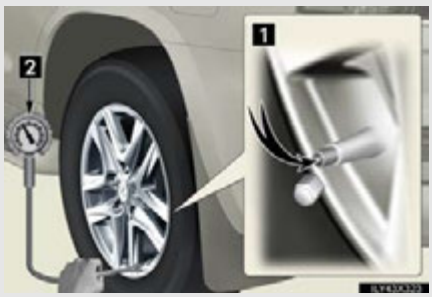
Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size are displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 895)



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inspection and adjustment procedure



1 Tire valve
2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the gauge gradations.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not at the recommended level, adjust the pressure.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to deflate.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Put the tire valve cap back on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Tire inflation pressure check interval**

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

■ **Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure**

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure**

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressure that is even just a few pounds off can affect ride quality and handling.
- Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

⚠ NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 767)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.
Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch IGNITION ON mode and switch to recirculated air mode, then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

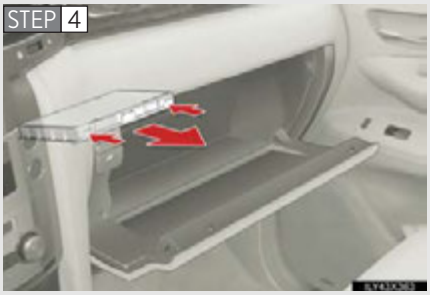
STEP 2 Open the glove box and remove the separate tray. (→P. 691)

STEP 3



Remove the filter cover.

STEP 4



Remove the filter case.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning method



If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the downward side.

Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 72 psi (500 kPa, 5.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar).
If it is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

Replacement method



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Checking interval**

Inspect, clean and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, more frequent cleaning or early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".)

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the system**

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver (To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with rag.)
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

Replacing the battery

STEP 1



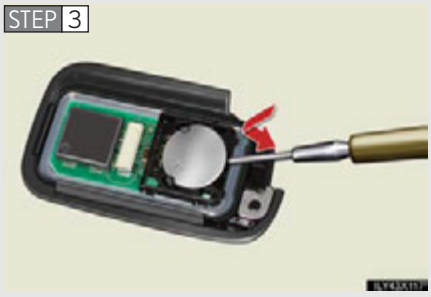
Take out the mechanical key (→P. 31).

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the electronic key battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **Use a CR1632 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by your Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealer. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the electronic key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover.
→P. 752

STEP 3 The fuses are located in the following places. To check the fuses, follow the instructions below.

▶ Engine compartment (fuse box on the left side)



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

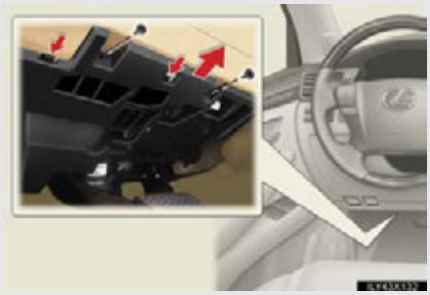
▶ Engine compartment (fuse box on the right side)



Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the bolts and the cover.



Remove the lid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Passenger's side instrument panel



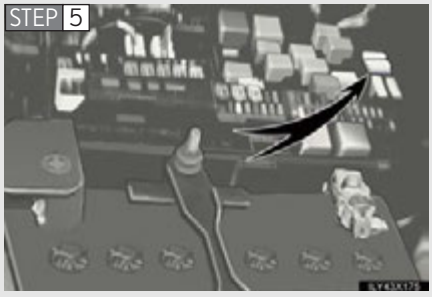
Remove the cover.



Remove the lid.

STEP 4 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" (→P. 791) for details about which fuse to check.

STEP 5



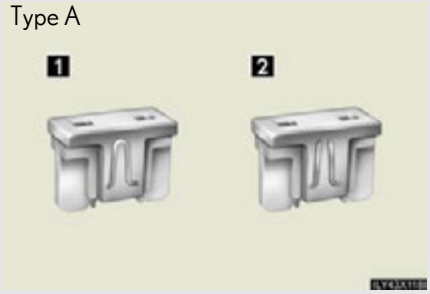
Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

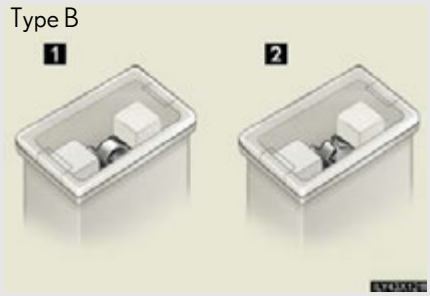
STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

▶ Type A and B

Type A



Type B



1 Normal fuse

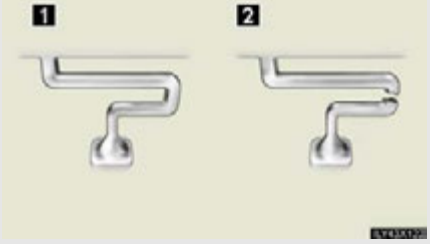
2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

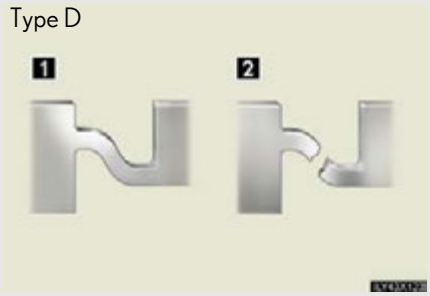
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type C and D

Type C



Type D



1 Normal fuse

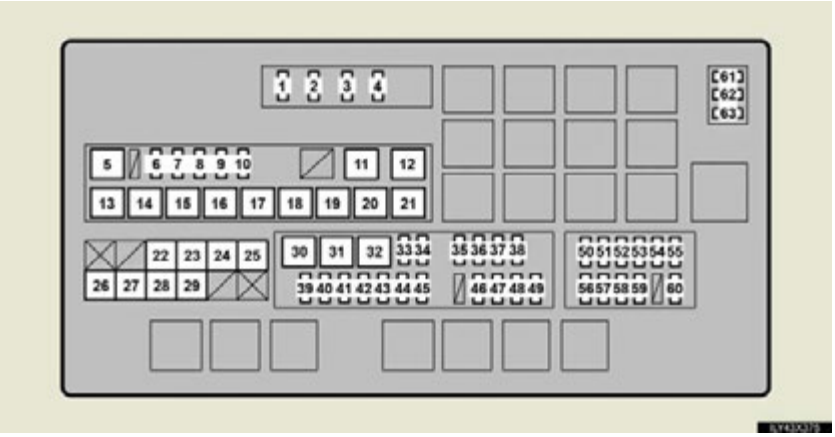
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

Engine compartment (fuse box on the left side)



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	A/F	15 A	A/F heater
2	HORN	10 A	Horn
3	EFI MAIN	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, A/F heater, fuel pump
4	IG2 MAIN	30 A	INJ, IGN, MET
5	RR A/C	50 A	Blower controller
6	CDS FAN	25 A	Condenser fan
7	RR S/HTR	20 A	Rear seat heater
8	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
9	STOP	15 A	Stoplights, high mounted stoplight, brake controller, ABS, VSC, main body ECU, Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, trailer

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
10	SEAT-A/C LH	25 A	Seat heaters and ventilators
11	HWD4	30 A	No circuit
12	HWD3	30 A	No circuit
13	AHC	50 A	4-Wheel AHC
14	PTC-1	50 A	PTC heater
15	PTC-2	50 A	PTC heater
16	PTC-3	50 A	PTC heater
17	RH-J/B	50 A	RH-J/B
18	SUB BATT	40 A	Towing
19	VGRS	40 A	VGRS ECU
20	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
21	DEFOG	30 A	Rear window defogger
22	SUB-R/B	100 A	SUB-R/B
23	HTR	50 A	Front air conditioning system
24	PBD	30 A	Power back door ECU
25	LH-J/B	150 A	LH-J/B
26	ALT	180 A	Alternator
27	A/PUMP NO.1	50 A	AI DRIVER
28	A/PUMP NO.2	50 A	AI DRIVER 2
29	MAIN	40 A	Headlight, daytime running light system, HEAD LL, HEAD RL, HEAD LH, HEAD RH

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

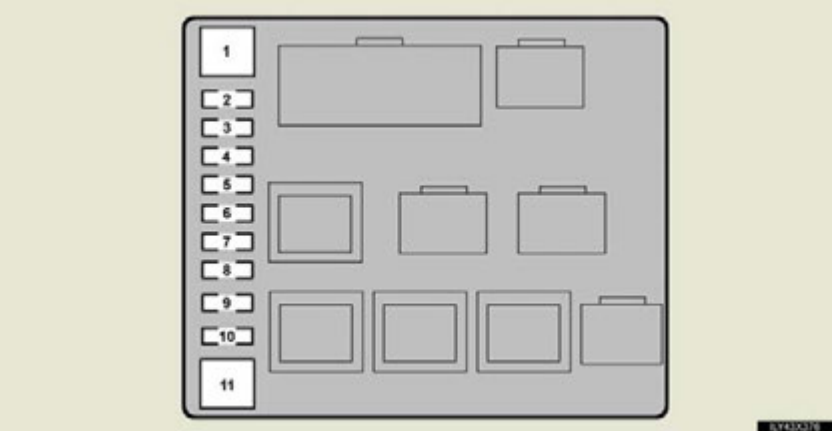
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
30	ABS1	50 A	ABS
31	ABS2	30 A	ABS
32	ST	30 A	Starter system
33	IMB	7.5 A	ID code box, smart access system with push-button start, GBS
34	AM2	5 A	Main body ECU
35	DOME2	7.5 A	Vanity lights, overhead module, rear interior light
36	ECU-B2	5 A	Driving position memory system, power back door ECU, power third seat
37	AMP 2	30 A	Audio system
38	RSE	7.5 A	Rear seat entertainment
39	TOWING	30 A	Towing
40	DOOR NO.2	25 A	Main body ECU
41	STR LOCK	20 A	Steering lock system
42	TURN-HAZ	15 A	Meter, front turn signal lights, side turn signal lights, rear turn signal lights, trailer
43	EFI MAIN2	20 A	Fuel pump
44	ETCS	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
45	ALT-S	5 A	IC-ALT
46	AMP 1	30 A	Audio system
47	RAD NO.1	10 A	Navigation system, audio system, parking assist system

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
48	ECU-B1	5 A	Smart access system with push-button start, overhead module, yaw rate & G sensor, tilt and telescopic steering, meter, cool box, gateway ECU, steering sensor, VGRS
49	DOME1	10 A	Illuminated entry system, power third seat switch, power back door switch, clock
50	HEAD LH	15 A	Headlight high beam (left)
51	HEAD LL	15 A	Headlight low beam (left)
52	INJ	10 A	Injector, ignition system
53	MET	5 A	Meter
54	IGN	10 A	Circuit open, SRS airbag system, gateway ECU, smart access system with push-button start, ABS, VSC, steering lock system, GBS
55	DRL	5 A	Daytime running lights
56	HEAD RH	15 A	Headlight high beam (right)
57	HEAD RL	15 A	Headlight low beam (right)
58	EFI NO.2	7.5 A	Air injection system, air flow meter
59	RR A/C NO.2	7.5 A	No circuit
60	DEF NO.2	5 A	Outside rear view mirror defoggers
61	SPARE	5 A	Spare fuse
62	SPARE	15 A	Spare fuse
63	SPARE	30 A	Spare fuse

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

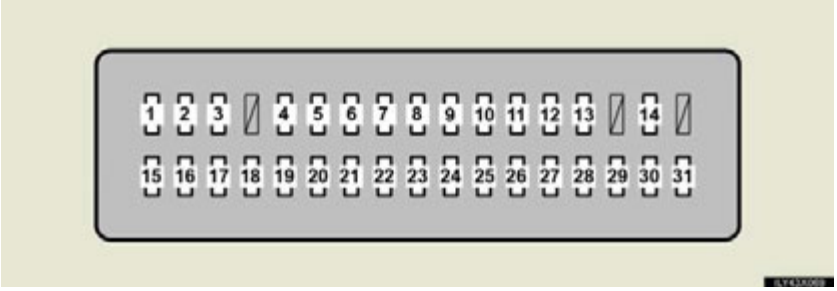
Engine compartment (fuse box on the right side)



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	HWD1	30 A	No circuit
2	TOW BRK	30 A	Brake controller
3	RR P/SEAT	30 A	Power second seat
4	PWR HTR	7.5 A	No circuit
5	DEICER	20 A	Windshield wiper de-icer
6	ALT-CDS	10 A	ALT-CDS
7	SECURITY	5 A	SECURITY
8	SEAT A/C RH	25 A	Seat heaters and ventilators
9	AI PMP HTR	10 A	AI pump heater
10	TOW TAIL	30 A	Towing tail light system
11	HWD2	30 A	No circuit

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driver's side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	CIG	15 A	Cigarette lighter
2	BK/UP LP	10 A	Back-up lights, trailer
3	ACC	7.5 A	Audio system, parking assist system, multi-display assembly, main body ECU, mirror ECU, satellite radio, smart access system with push-button start

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
4	PANEL	10 A	Ashtray, brake controller, cigarette lighter, cool box, center differential lock, driving mode switches, multi-information display, air conditioning system, glove box light, audio system, emergency flashers, headlight cleaner switch, driving position memory buttons, outside rear view mirror switches, overhead module, roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch, rear heater panel, shift lever switch, power back door main switch, camera switch, VSC OFF switch, steering switch, console switch, instrument panel light control
5	ECU-IG No.2	10 A	Air conditioning system, rear heater panel, overhead module, ABS, VSC, steering sensor, yaw rate & G sensor, main body ECU, stoplights, moon roof, anti-glare inside rear view mirror
6	WINCH	5 A	No circuit
7	A/C IG	10 A	Cool box, condenser fan, cooler compressor, rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers, smog sensor
8	TAIL	15 A	Tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, parking lights, side marker lights

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

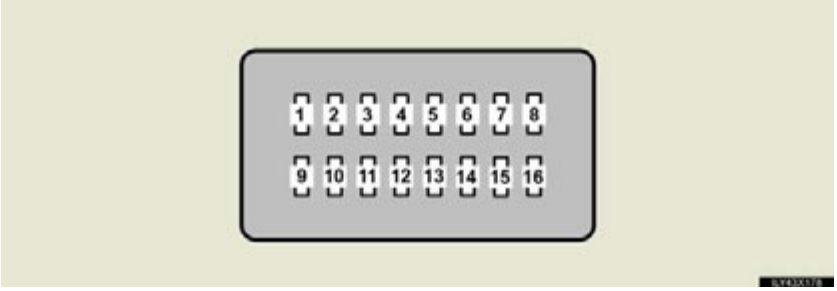
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
9	WIPER	30 A	Windshield wiper
10	WSH	20 A	Windshield washer
11	RR WIPER	15 A	Rear window wiper and washer
12	4WD	20 A	Four-wheel drive system
13	LH-IG	5 A	Alternator, towing, seat heater and ventilators, windshield wiper de-icer, front seat belt, emergency flasher, inverter switch, shift lever switch
14	ECU-IG No.1	5 A	ABS, VSC, tilt and telescopic steering, gateway ECU, shift lock system, parking assist system, cruise control switch, pre-collision system, headlight cleaner, multi-display assembly, rain-sensing windshield wiper, driving position memory system, power door lock system
15	S/ROOF	25 A	Moon roof
16	RR DOOR RH	20 A	Power windows
17	MIR	15 A	Mirror ECU, outside rear view mirror defoggers
18	RR DOOR LH	20 A	Power windows
19	FR DOOR LH	20 A	Power windows
20	FR DOOR RH	20 A	Power windows

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
21	RR FOG	7.5 A	No circuit
22	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioning system
23	AM1	5 A	No circuit
24	TI & TE	15 A	Tilt and telescopic steering
25	FR P/SEAT RH	30 A	Power seat
26	PWR OUTLET	15 A	Power outlet
27	OBD	7.5 A	On Board Diagnostics
28	PSB	30 A	Pre-collision system
29	DR/LCK	25 A	Main body ECU
30	FR P/SEAT LH	30 A	Power seat
31	INVERTER	15 A	Inverter

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger's side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	RSF LH	30 A	Third seat adjustment (left)
2	B/DR CLSR RH	30 A	Back door closer
3	B/DR CLSR LH	30 A	Back door closer
4	RSF RH	30 A	Third seat adjustment (right)
5	DOOR DL	15 A	No circuit
6	AHC-B	20 A	4-Wheel AHC
7	TEL	5 A	Multimedia
8	TOW BK/UP	7.5 A	Towing
9	AHC-B No.2	10 A	4-Wheel AHC
10	ECU-IG No.4	5 A	VGRS, power back door, rear ECU, 4-Wheel AHC, third seat adjustment, tire pressure warning system ECU

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
11	SEAT-A/C FAN	10 A	Ventilators
12	SEAT-HTR	20 A	Seat heaters
13	AFS	5 A	Adaptive Front-lighting System
14	ECU-IG No.3	5 A	Adaptive Front-lighting System, dynamic radar cruise control system
15	STRG HTR	10 A	Heated steering wheel
16	TV	10 A	Multi-display assembly

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 803)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in the circuits**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.
For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

Prepare a replacement light bulb

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 896)

Remove the engine compartment cover

→P. 752

Front bulb locations



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear bulb locations

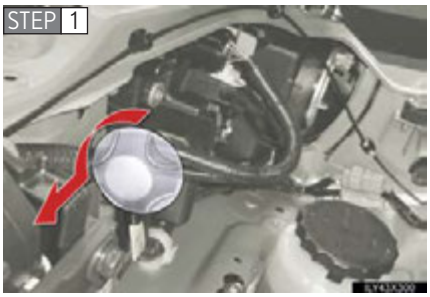


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing light bulbs

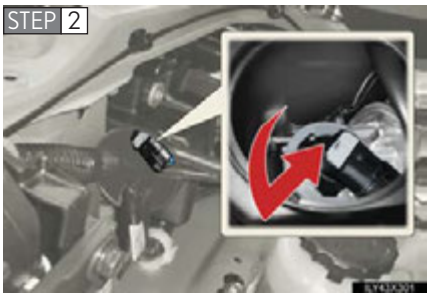
Headlight high beams

STEP 1



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

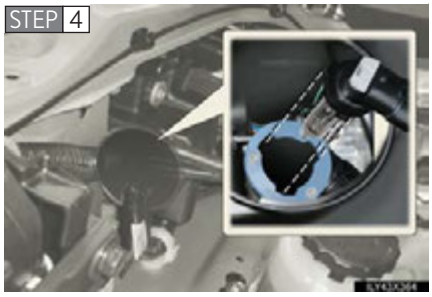
STEP 3



Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

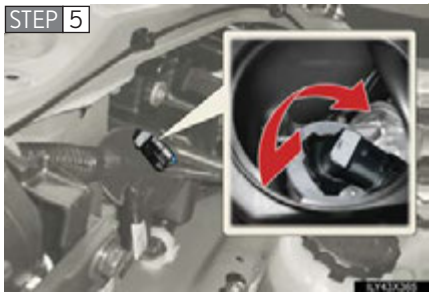
STEP 4



Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.

STEP 5



Turn and secure the bulb base.

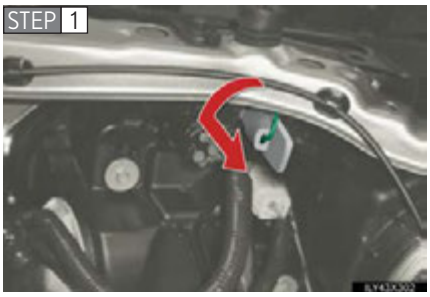
Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

STEP 6 When installing the cover, conduct STEP 1 in reverse.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

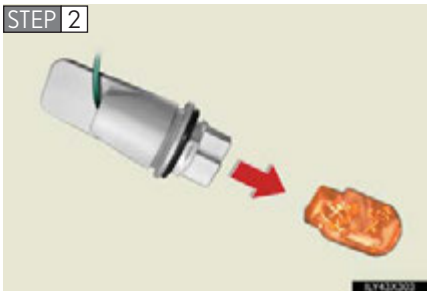
Front turn signal lights

STEP 1



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 2



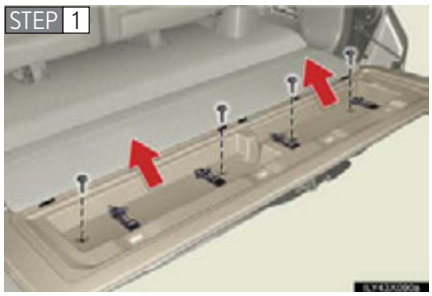
Remove the light bulb.

STEP 3 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

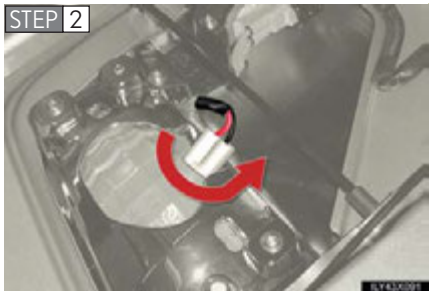
Back-up lights

STEP 1



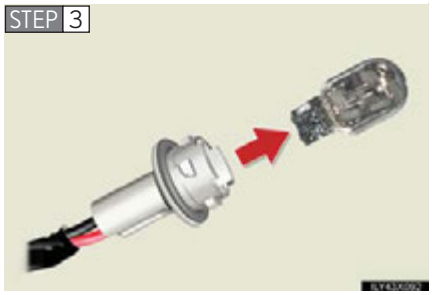
Open the back door and remove the bolts and the cover.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

STEP 3



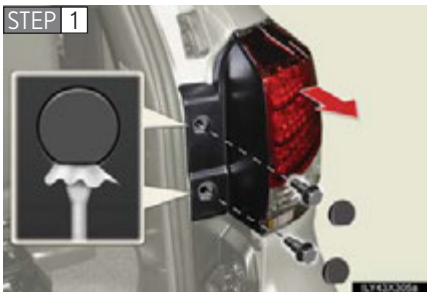
Remove the light bulb.

STEP 4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear turn signal lights

STEP 1



Open the back door and remove the bolts and lamp assembly.

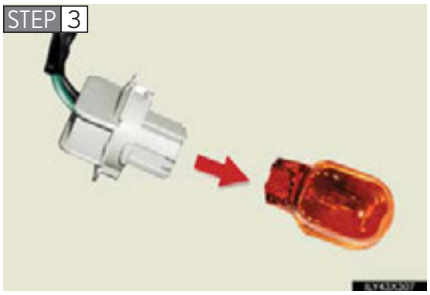
Use a cloth to prevent scratches.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

STEP 4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Headlight low beams
- Front side marker lights
- Parking lights
- Daytime running lights
- Front fog lights
- Side turn signal lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Stop/tail lights
- Tail lights
- Rear side marker lights
- License plate lights
- Running board light
- Outer foot lights

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens**

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer, for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ **LED lights**

The front side marker lights, parking lights, daytime running lights, front fog lights, side turn signal lights, stop/tail lights, tail lights, rear side marker lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

■ **Discharge headlights**

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.



- While the low beam headlights are turned on, and for a short time after they have been turned off, metal components at the rear of the headlight assembly will be extremely hot.
  To prevent burns, do not touch these metal components until you are certain they have cooled down.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Discharge headlights

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 30000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
  Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

■ To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When trouble arises 5

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 816
If your vehicle needs to be towed 817
If you think something is wrong 824
Fuel pump shut off system 825

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 826
If a warning message is displayed..... 837
If you have a flat tire 854
If the engine will not start 868
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"..... 870
If you lose your keys 871
If the electronic key does not operate properly 872
If the battery is discharged 875
If your vehicle overheats 878
If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 881
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 883

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.



Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash.

To turn them off, press the switch once again.

Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or flat-bed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.
If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly.
(→P. 818, 822)

Situations needs to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Towing with a sling-type truck

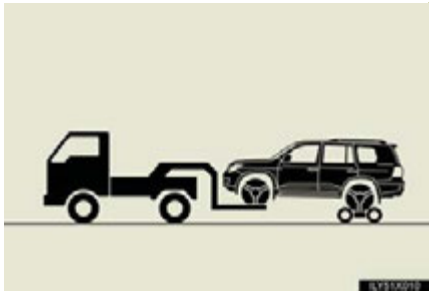


Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

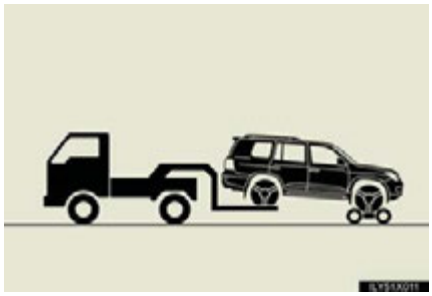
Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

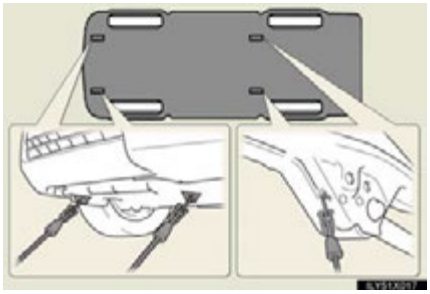
▶ From the rear



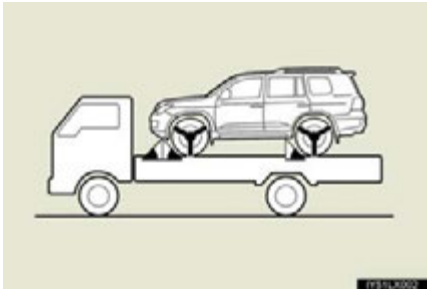
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using a flatbed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for 50 miles (80 km) at low speeds.
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

▶ Towing hook



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency towing procedure

STEP 1 Securely attach a cable or chain to the towing hook.
Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

STEP 2 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.
If the engine does not start, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3 Shift the four-wheel drive control switch to "H4". (The center differential is unlocked.)

STEP 4 Change the vehicle height to N (standard) mode and press the height control OFF button to end the vehicle height operation. (→P. 320)

STEP 5 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.
When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P. 870

While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

Wheel nut wrench

Wheel nut wrench is installed in the luggage compartment. (→P. 854)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle



Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground.
If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.

■ While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing hook, cables or chains.
  The towing hook, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the off.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ Installing towing hook to the vehicle

Make sure that towing hook are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing hook may come loose during towing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ To avoid serious damage to your vehicle



Do not use the rear emergency towing hook.

■ To prevent body damage when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal
- Engine oil pressure gauge continually points lower than normal.
- Voltmeter continually points higher or lower than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an air-bag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*** • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The emission control system; • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system.
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; • The front passenger occupant classification system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system.
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system.
 (Comes on or flashes)	**Pre-collision system warning light (if equipped)** Indicates: • Malfunction in the pre-collision system if the light comes on. • The system cannot temporarily be used if the light flashes. (→P. 845)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Slip indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC; • Trailer sway control; • The Active TRAC; • The hill-start assist control system; • Crawl Control system; or • Multi-terrain select.
 (Flashes)	**"AFS OFF" indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in the AFS.

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1** Indicates that a door is not fully closed.	Check that all doors are closed.
	**Low fuel level warning light** Indicates that remaining fuel is about 4.0 gal. (15.0 L, 3.3 Imp.gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (On the center panel)	**Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	**Tire pressure warning light**	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 832) • Flat tire (→P. 854)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the spare tire) to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. (→P. 834)	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Unengaged "Park" warning light** Indicates that the transmission "Park" mechanism is not engaged.	Shift four-wheel drive control to "H4" or "L4". (→P. 332)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on or flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 837

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

*2: Driver's seat belt buzzer:
The driver's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

Front passenger's seat belt buzzer:
The front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds once if the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h). If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is the fuel empty?
  If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light blinks**

Take the specified steps. (→P. 335)

If the brake system warning light or the malfunction indicator light also comes on, or the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light continues to blink after taking the specified steps, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to transfer between "H4" and "L4" modes, and the center differential lock may not be able to be locked or unlocked. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- Front impact sensors
- Side impact sensors (rear)
- Side impact sensors (front door)
- Safing sensor (rear)
- The driver's seat belt buckle switch
- The driver's seat position sensor
- Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
- The airbags
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources
- The front passenger occupant classification system
- "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
- Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
- The "RSCA OFF" indicator light

■ **Changing the engine oil**

Make sure to reset oil change system

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system will become inoperative in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the luggage compartment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

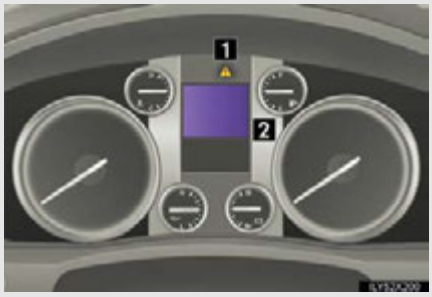
■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly**

Do not install tires with different specifications or marks, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, or shows messages that indicate a need for maintenance.

If a warning is shown on the instrument cluster, stay calm and perform the following actions:



1 Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

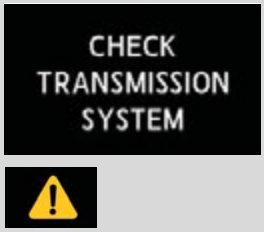
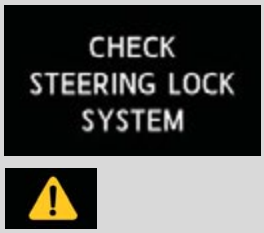
2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning lights comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning message	Details
	**Indicates a malfunction in the automatic transmission system** A buzzer also sounds.
	**Indicates a malfunction in the steering lock system** A buzzer also sounds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details
   (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system** A buzzer also sounds.
  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the intuitive parking assist** The site of malfunction is shown flashing on the display.
 	**Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system** Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
	Indicates a malfunction in the dynamic radar cruise control system (if equipped) Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details
 	**Indicates a malfunction in the VGRS** A buzzer also sounds.
 	**Indicates a malfunction in the 4-wheel AHC system** A buzzer also sounds.
  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the automatic high beam** A buzzer also sounds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message goes off.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	**Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed** The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h),  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed.	Make sure that all the doors are closed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
MOONROOF OPEN  (Flashes)	**Indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, and the driver's door open)**	Close the moon roof.
ENGINE OIL LOW 	**Indicates that engine oil level is low** A buzzer also sounds.	Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary. This message may appear if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level surface and check to see if the message disappears.
RELEASE PARKING BRAKE BRAKE (U.S.A.)  (Canada)  (Flashes)	**Indicates, if the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h), that the parking brake is still engaged.**	Release the parking brake.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	**Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high** A buzzer also sounds.	Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to P and wait until the light goes off. If the light goes off, you may start the vehicle again. If the light does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer.
	**Indicates that the washer fluid level is low**	Add washer fluid.
	**Low tire inflation pressure**	Check the tire inflation pressure, and adjust to the appropriate level.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (U.S.A. only)	**Indicates that all maintenance according to the driven distance on the maintenance schedule* should be performed soon.**	If necessary, perform maintenance.
	Comes on approximately 4500 miles (7200 km) after the message has been reset.	
 (U.S.A. only)	**Indicates that all maintenance is required to correspond to the driven distance on the maintenance schedule*.**	Perform the necessary maintenance. Please reset the message after the maintenance is performed (→P. 741)
	Comes on approximately 5000 miles (8000 km) after the message has been reset. (The indicator will not work properly unless the message has been reset.)	

*: Refer to the separate "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement" for the maintenance interval applicable to your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	**Indicates that the pre-collision system is not currently functional because the grille or the sensor is dirty**	• Check the grille and the sensor and clean them if they are dirty. • In case of overheating, the system will become functional once the system cools down.
PCS (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that the pre-collision system is not currently functional due to overheating.**	
  (If equipped)	**Indicates that intuitive parking assist sensor is dirty or covered with ice**	Clean the sensor.
  (If equipped)	**Indicates that the dynamic radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice**	Clean the sensor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
  (If equipped)	**Indicates that the dynamic radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance**	• Switch driving mode to either normal or power. • If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to either intermittent or slow mode.
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)** A buzzer also sounds.	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.
 	**Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 4.0 gal. (15.0 L, 3.3 Imp.gal.) or less**	Refuel the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light go off.

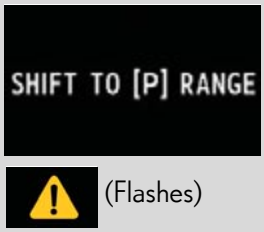
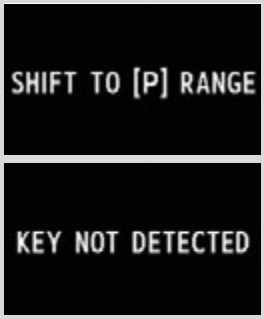
Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	3 times	KEY NOT DETECTED  (Flashes)	The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and a door other than the driver's door was opened and closed while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in a mode other than off.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
			The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was in "P" and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally. An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle.	Start the engine with the electronic key present*.

*: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulty receiving signal from the key. (→P. 872)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Continuous	—	 (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened when the shift lever was not in "P" and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off.	Shift the shift lever to "P".
Continuous	Continuous	 (Displayed alternately) (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was not in "P" and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off.	• Shift the shift lever to "P". • Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL, TOUCH ENGINE SWITCH WITH KEY  (Flashes)	• When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. • The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed two consecutive times.	Touch the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	KEY BATTERY LOW 	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery. (→P. 784)
Once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL AND PUSH ENGINE SWITCH TO START  (Flashes)	A door was opened and closed with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch turned off and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was put in ACCESSORY mode twice without the engine being started.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal.
Once	—	STEERING LOCK ACTIVE  (Flashes)	The steering lock could not be released within 3 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being pressed.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal and moving the steering wheel left and right.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Other messages

If the following message is displayed, take appropriate action and confirm that the message has disappeared. (→P. 337)

Message	Correction procedure
CRAWL NOT AVAILABLE SELECT L4 AND SHIFT TO [D] OR [R] POSITION	Select the four-wheel drive control switch in L4 and shift the shift lever to “D” or “R”.
CRAWL NOT AVAILABLE CHECK SYSTEM OPERATION CONDITIONS	Confirm the operating conditions.
TURN ASSIST FUNCTION NOT AVAILABLE CHECK SYSTEM OPERATION CONDITIONS 	Confirm the operating conditions to operate Turn Assist function.
TURN ASSIST FUNCTION NOT AVAILABLE ACTIVATE CRAWL CONTROL	Turn on the Crawl Control switch to operate Turn Assist function.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Resetting the tire pressure warning data**

After adjusting the tire inflation pressure, be sure to initialize the data. (→P. 768)

If the message remains on, the system may have malfunctioned. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Warning message in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode of the dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)**

In the following cases, the warning message may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases:

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

⚠ NOTICE

■ **While the engine oil level warning is displayed**

Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Turn off the 4-Wheel AHC. (→P. 320)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

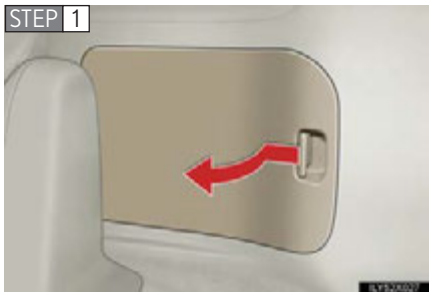
Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Taking out the jack

STEP 1



Remove the cover.

STEP 2



Unhook the rubber band and take out the jack.

1 Loosen

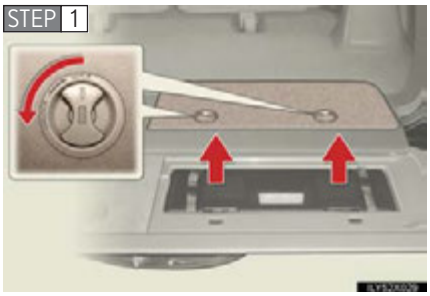
2 Tighten

Loosen and remove the jack.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

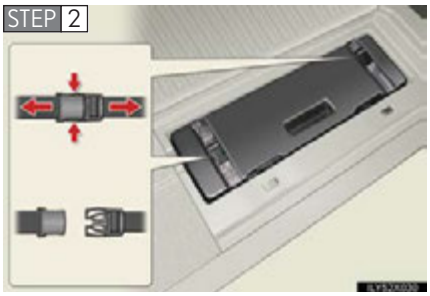
Taking out the tool box

STEP 1



Remove the cover.

STEP 2



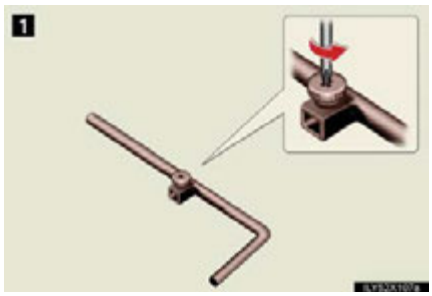
Take out the tool box.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

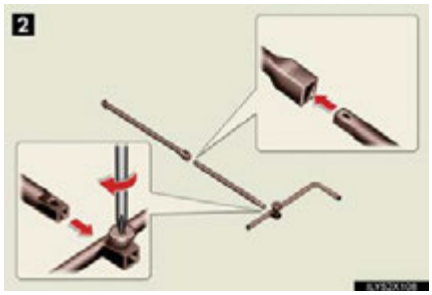
Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle and the jack extension bar from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.



1 Loosen the screw using a screwdriver.



2 Assemble the jack handle and the jack handle extension bar and tighten the screw.

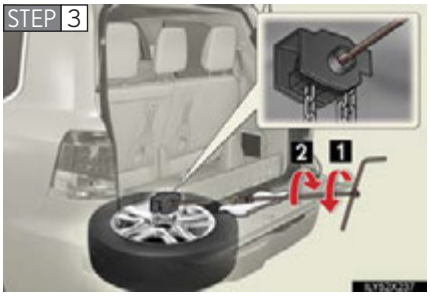
Check that the screw is firmly tightened.



Open the cover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3



Insert the jack handle extension into the lowering screw.

1 Lower

2 Raise

Place a rag under the jack handle extension to protect the back door.

STEP 4



Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.

STEP 5



Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing a flat tire

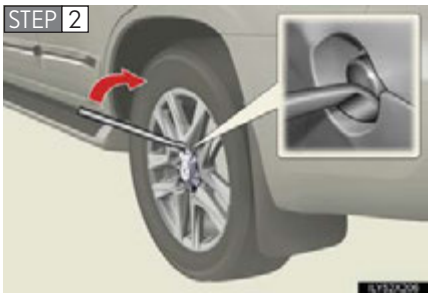
STEP 1



Chock the tires.

Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

STEP 2



Pry off the wheel ornament, using the beveled end of the wheel ornament remover as shown.

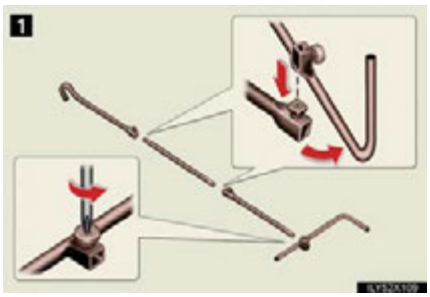
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



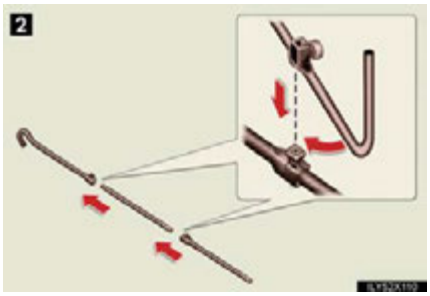
STEP 3 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 4 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle, jack extension bar and jack handle bar from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.



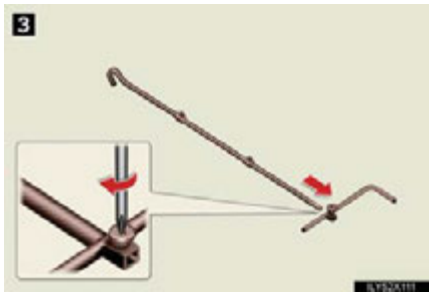
1 Loosen the bolts and the screw using either the jack handle or a screwdriver.



2 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle bar and tighten the bolts.

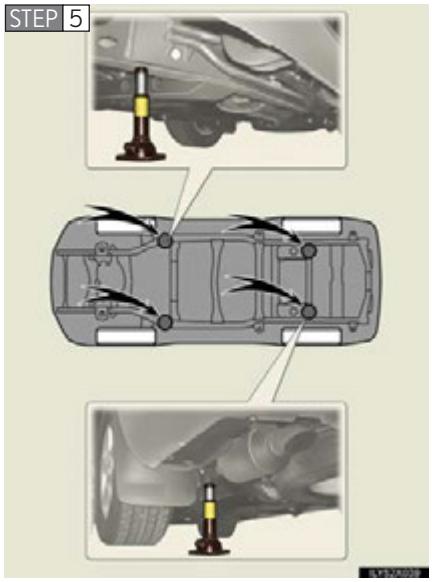
Check that the bolts are firmly tightened.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



3 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle and tighten the screw.

Check that the screw is firmly tightened.



Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Front - Under the chassis frame side rail

Rear - Under the rear axle housing

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 6



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

STEP 7



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing the spare tire

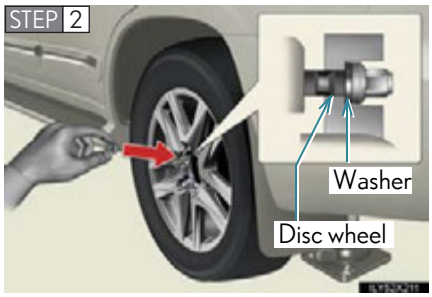
STEP 1



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

STEP 2



Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

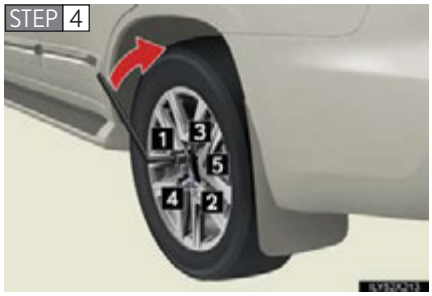
Turn the nut washers until they come into contact with the disc wheel.

STEP 3



Lower the vehicle.

STEP 4

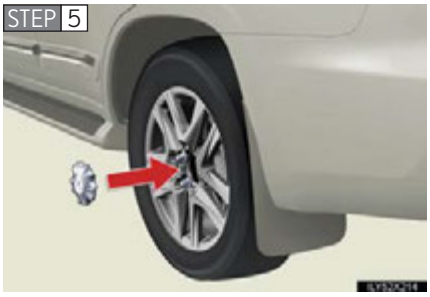


Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 5



Reinstall the wheel ornament.

Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools

STEP 1



Lay down the tire with the outer side facing up, and install the holding bracket.

STEP 2 Raise the tire.

STEP 3 Stow the tools and jack securely, and replace all covers.

After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 768)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or serious injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Be sure to turn off the 4-Wheel AHC and stop the engine.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle will be injured.

■ Using the jack handle

Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using a Phillips-head screwdriver, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Replacing a flat tire

● Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury:

- Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
- Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Turn off the vehicle height control.
  The vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
  (→P. 320)

● Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to turn off the power back door main switch (→P. 57). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ When stowing the flat tire

Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.

■ When replacing the tires

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Replace the grommets for the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters as well.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 767)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine still does not start after following the correct starting procedure (→P. 177) or releasing the steering lock (→P. 179), confirm the following points.

The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 177)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 119)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 875)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 869)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 875)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer, if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is functioning normally.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Put the shift lever in "P".

STEP 3 Set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Push and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

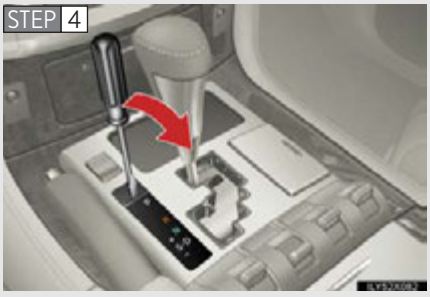
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

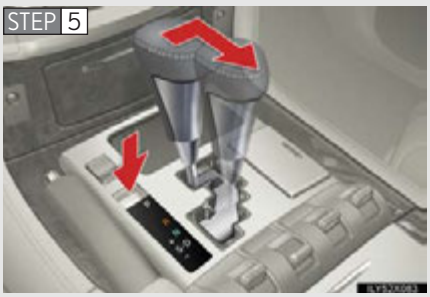
STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4



Pry the cover up with a flathead screw driver or equivalent.

STEP 5



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

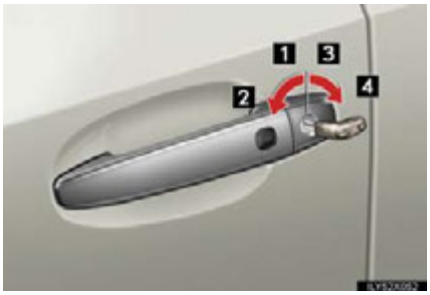
If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer, using the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 40) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors and key linked functions



Using the mechanical key (→P. 31) in order to perform the following operations.

1 Locks all doors

2 Closes the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)*

3 Unlocks the door
Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)*

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to "P" and apply the brakes.

STEP 2



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key (including the card key) to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

An alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key that is touched to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch if any of the doors is opened and closed while the key is touched to the switch.

STEP 3 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds after the buzzer sounds, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to "P" and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted.
(→P. 784)

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 178)

Alarm

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 121)

⚠ CAUTION

When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows and moon roof

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof.

Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in power window and moon roof.

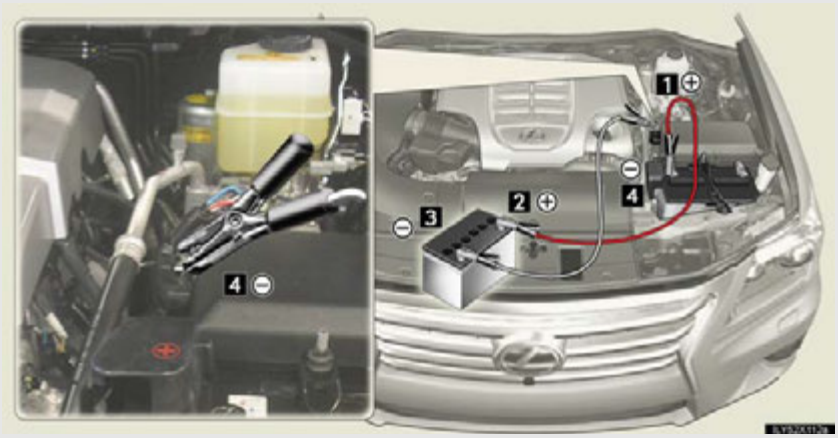
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the hood. Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 752)

STEP 2 Connect the jumper cables.



1 Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
2 Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
3 Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
4 Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the vehicle's engine.

STEP 6 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer, as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **Avoiding a discharged battery**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

- The power back door must be initialized. (→P. 60)
- Make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery. The key may be locked in the vehicle if the alarm is activated. (→P. 122)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the "+" and "-" terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery.

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

When handling jumper cables

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P. 192) enters the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

Correction procedures

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

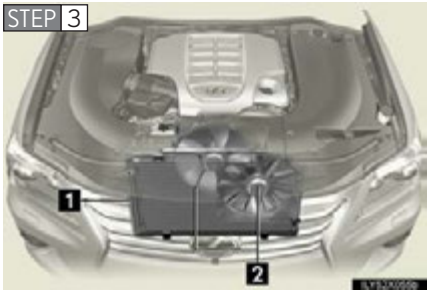
STEP 2 If you see steam:

Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

If you do not see steam:

Carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

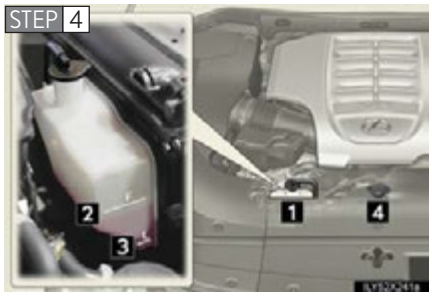
1 Radiator

2 Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP 4



The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “F” and “L” lines on the reservoir.

1 Reservoir
2 “F”
3 “L”
4 Radiator cap

STEP 5



Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

STEP 6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fans operate and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fans operate when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fans are operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fans may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

STEP 7 If the fans are not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the fans are operating:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap or the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "P".

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the rear wheels.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 Shift the shift lever to the "D" or "R" position and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ **When it is difficult to free the vehicle**



Press to turn off Active TRAC.

■ **Extra high mode**

→P. 326

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.
- When a warning message for the automatic transmission fluid temperature is displayed while attempting to free a stuck vehicle, immediately remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and wait until the warning message disappears. Otherwise, the transmission may become damaged. (→P. 843)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to "N".

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to "N"

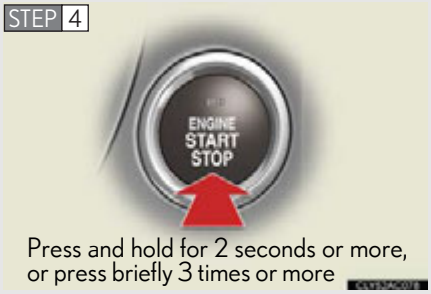
STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to "N"

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

To stop the engine, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle specifications 6

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 886

Fuel information 897

Tire information 901

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 912

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 923

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		198.0 in. (5030 mm)
Overall width		77.6 in. (1970 mm)
Overall height*1		75.6 in. (1920 mm)*2 73.4 in. (1865 mm)*3
Wheelbase		112.2 in. (2850 mm)
Tread	Front	64.6 in. (1640 mm)
	Rear	64.4 in. (1635 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		1285 lb. (580 kg)
TWR (trailer weight + cargo weight)	With brake	7000 lb. (3175 kg)
	Without brake	1000 lb. (454 kg)

*1: Unladen vehicles
*2: Vehicles with roof luggage carrier
*3: Vehicles without roof luggage carrier

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

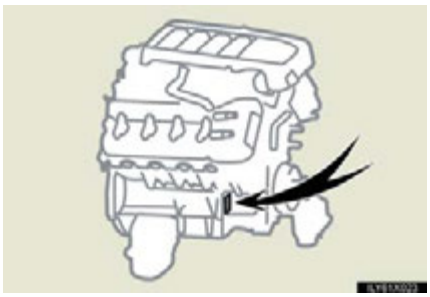


This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

Engine number



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine

Model	5.7L V8 (3UR-FE)
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 4.02 in. (94.0 × 102.0 mm)
Displacement	345.6 cu.in. (5663 cm^3)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
With filter	7.9 qt. (7.5 L, 6.6 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	7.5 qt. (7.1 L, 6.2 Imp.qt.)

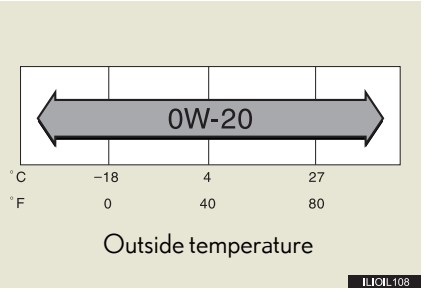
*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC GF-5 multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 0W-20



SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 is not available, SAE 5W-20 oil may be used. However, it must be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cooling system

Capacity (Reference)	17.6 qt. (16.7 L, 14.7 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following. • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO SK20HR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

NOTICE

■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electrical system

Battery Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.6—12.8 V Fully charged 12.2—12.4 V Half charged 11.8—12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

Differential

Oil capacity Front Rear	 2.01 qt. (1.90 L, 1.67 Imp.qt.) 4.44 qt. (4.20 L, 3.70 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity	With air-cooled type ATF cooler	12.6 qt. (11.9 L, 10.5 Imp.qt.)
	Without air-cooled type ATF cooler	12.3 qt. (11.6 L, 10.2 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer

Oil capacity	1.53 qt. (1.45 L, 1.28 Imp.qt.)
Oil type*	Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF or equivalent
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	3.6 in. (92 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lever travel*2	5 — 7 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the engine is running

*2: Parking brake lever travel when pulled up with a force of 45.0 lbf (200 N, 20.4 kgf)

Chassis lubrication

Propeller shafts	Spider	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2
	Slide yoke	Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.18 in. (30 mm)
Power steering fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Suspension

Fluid type	Suspension fluid AHC

Tires and wheels

Tire size	P285/50R20 111V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	**Normal driving** Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) **Trailer towing** Add 2 psi (10 kPa, 0.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires.
Wheel size	20 × 8 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights Low beam High beam	 — 9005	 35 60	 A B
	Front turn signal lights	7444NA	28	C
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	C
	Back-up lights	—	16	C
	Running board lights	—	3.8	C
	Outer foot lights	—	5	C
Interior	Front interior light	—	8	C
	Rear interior lights With rear personal lights Without rear personal lights	 —	 8 8	 C E
	Vanity lights	—	2	D
	Door courtesy lights	—	5	C
	Glove box light	—	1.2	C
	Luggage compartment light	—	5	E

A: D4S high-intensity discharge
B: HB3 halogen bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs
D: Single end bulbs
E: Double end bulbs

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A..

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Gasoline quality standards**

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives**

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains minimum detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems, per EPA's lowest additives concentration program.
- Lexus strongly recommends the use of Top Tier Detergent Gasoline. For more information on Top Tier Detergent Gasoline and a list of marketers, please go to the official website www.toptiergas.com.

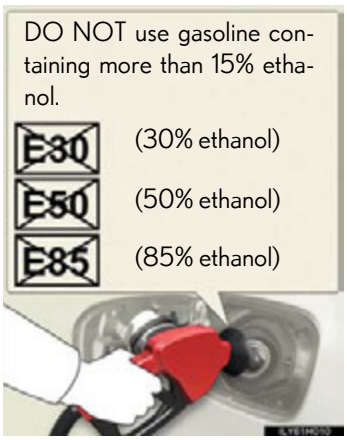
■ **Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline**

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline**



- Use only gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol.
  DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 15% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E30, E50, E85 (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 15% ethanol).
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ **Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT**

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Notice on fuel quality**

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
  Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.
  At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel-related poor driveability**

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ **When refueling with gasohol**

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire information

Typical tire symbols



1 Tire size (→P. 903)

2 Summer tires or all season tires (→P. 770)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

3 Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

4 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 902)

5 Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

6 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 766)

7 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 906)

8 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 906)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

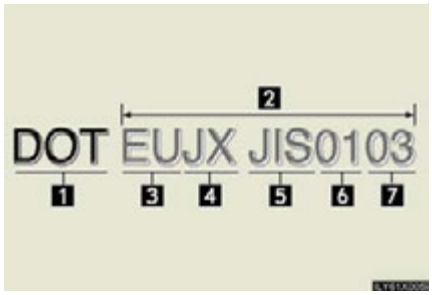
9 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly put into the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

10 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has "RADIAL" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "RADIAL" is a bias-ply tire.

Typical DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)



1 DOT symbol*

2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)

3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark

4 Tire size code

5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)

6 Manufacturing week

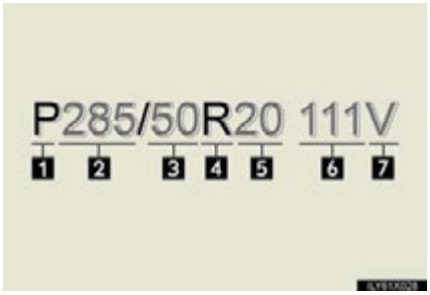
7 Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire size

Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
2 Section width (millimeters)
3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
5 Wheel diameter (inches)
6 Load index (2 digits or 3 digits)
7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

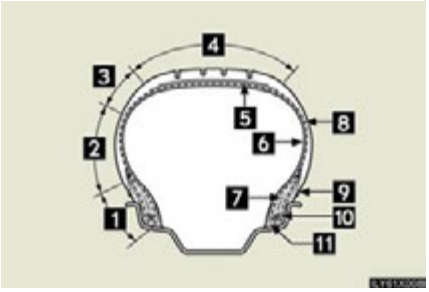
Tire dimensions



1 Section width
2 Tire height
3 Wheel diameter

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire section names



1 Bead
2 Sidewall
3 Shoulder
4 Tread
5 Belt
6 Inner liner
7 Reinforcing rubber
8 Carcass
9 Rim lines
10 Bead wires
11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use. Performance may differ significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

Grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning: The temperature grades of a tire assume that it is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Intended outboard sidewall	(a)The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b)The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*: Table 1—Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences.
Programming of these preferences can be performed by your Lexus dealer.

It is also possible to customize certain vehicle features yourself using the touch screen.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Customizing vehicle features using the touch screen

STEP 1 Press the "SETUP" button.

STEP 2 Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Vehicle Customization".

STEP 4



Touch the setting to be changed. Change each setting and touch "Save".

If "Save" is not touched before switching to another screen, any changes will be lost.

STEP 5 A message indicating that the settings are being saved will appear.
Do not perform any other operations while this message is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customizable features

Vehicle customization settings can be changed at your Lexus dealer. Some settings can be changed using the touch screen.

1 Settings that can be changed using the touch screen
2 Settings that can be changed using the vehicle switches
3 Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 35)	Smart access system with push-button start	On	Off	O	–	O
	Smart door unlocking	Driver's door	All the doors	O	O	O

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Wireless remote control (→P. 49)	Wireless remote control	On	Off	–	–	O
	Open door warning function (when locking the vehicle)	On	Off	–	–	O
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	O	–	O
	Adjust the volume of confirmation buzzer sounds when the vehicle is locked or unlocked	7	Off	O	–	O
			1 to 6			
	Power back door operation	Push and hold	One short push	–	–	O
			Push twice	–	–	O
			Off	–	–	O
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 35) and wireless remote control (→P. 49)	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	–	O
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			30 seconds			
			120 seconds			

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Door lock (→P. 52)	Unlocking using a mechanical key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	O	–	O
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	Off	On	O	–	O
	Shifting the shift lever to position other than "P" locks all doors	On	Off	O	–	O
	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors	On	Off	O	–	O
	Opening the driver's door unlocks all doors	Off	On	O	–	O
Power back door (→P. 57)	Switch operation	Push and hold	One short push	–	–	O
	Operation signal	Off	On	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation (one motion)	On*1	Off*2	–	–	O

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Power windows (→P. 108)	Mechanical key linked operation (close)	Off	On	–	–	O
	Mechanical key linked operation (open)	Off	On	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation (open)	Off	On	–	–	O
	Linked entry function (close)	Off	On	–	–	O
Moon roof (→P. 111)	Mechanical key linked operation*3	Off	On	–	–	O
	Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation (open)*4	Off	On	–	–	O
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	O
	Linked entry function*5	Off	On	–	–	O

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Automatic light control system (→P. 208, 213)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O
	Daytime running light system	On	Off*6	O	–	O
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			60 seconds			
			90 seconds			
	Automatic High Beam system	On	Off	–	–	O
Rear window wiper and washer (→P. 228)	Switching operation when the vehicle is stationary	On	Off	–	–	O
	Drip prevention function	On	Off	–	–	O
	Rear window wiper operation linked with washer	On	Off	–	–	O
	Linked operation when the shift lever in "R" position	On	Off	–	–	O
	Times of the linked operation when the shift lever in "R" position	Once	Continuously	–	–	O

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Illumination (→P. 686)	Time period before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			
	Time period before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			
	Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off	On	Off	–	–	O
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person (when the interior light switch is door position)	On	Off	–	–	O
	Shift lever light	On	Off	–	–	O
	Footwell lights	On	Off	–	–	O

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Illumination (→P. 686)	Outer foot lights	On	Off	–	–	O
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2	–	–	O
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for brightening the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2	–	–	O
Intuitive parking assist (→P. 251)	Detection distance of the rear center sensor	Far	Near	O	–	O
	Alert Volume (alert volume can be adjusted)	3	1 to 5	O	–	O
	Display setting (when intuitive parking assist is operating)	All sensors displayed	Display off	O	–	O
Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 444)	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3	O	–	O
	A/C Auto switch operation	Auto	Manual	O	–	O
Front seats (→P. 67)	Power easy access system	Partial	Off	O	–	O
			Full			

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3
Turn signal lever (→P. 189)	Time of flashing of the lane change signal flashers	3	Off	O	–	O
			5			
			7			
			9			
			11			
Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 168)	Eco Driving Indicator Light	On	Off	–	O	O

*1: In this case, the power back door operation will be made only by push and hold.

*2: The back door can be opened using the wireless remote control after unlocking the back door.

*3: The settings can be changed when the mechanical key linked operation of the power window is set to ON.

*4: The settings can be changed when the wireless remote control linked operation of the power window is set to ON.

*5: The settings can be changed when the entry function linked operation of the power window is set to ON.

*6: Vehicles sold outside Canada

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Vehicle customization**

- If the smart access system with push-button start is turned "OFF", unlock door cannot be selected.
- If the doors are not opened after unlocking and are then automatically re-locked, a signal will be given if "Operation signal (Emergency flashers)" or "Operation signal (Buzzer)" are set to ON.

■ **When setting using the vehicle switches**

When using the vehicle switches to set an item that can also be set using the touch screen, the item displayed on the touch screen will not change immediately.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is first turned to OFF, the screen display will change once the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode again.

■ **When customizing using the touch screen**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to "P". Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Multi-information display (→P. 200)

Available languages	English (U.S.A.), French

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Power back door	• After reconnecting or changing the battery with power back door opened • After changing a fuse with power back door opened	P. 60
Message indicating maintenance is required	• After the maintenance is performed	P. 741
Tire pressure warning system	• When the set tire pressure has been changed before towing. • When rotating the tires in above situation.	P. 767

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6-3. Initialization

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For owners 7

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 926
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 927
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 929

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation adéquate des ceintures de sécurité



- Tirez sur la ceinture épaulière jusqu'à ce qu'elle recouvre entièrement l'épaule; elle ne doit cependant pas toucher le cou ni glisser de l'épaule.
- Placez la ceinture abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier. Tenez-vous assis bien au fond du siège, le dos droit.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Entretien et soin

Ceintures de sécurité

Avec un tissu ou une éponge, nettoyez à l'aide d'un savon doux et de l'eau tiède. Vérifiez aussi les ceintures régulièrement pour vous assurer qu'elles ne présentent pas d'usure excessive, d'effilochage ou de coupures.

⚠ ATTENTION

Lorsque vous utilisez la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges



N'utilisez pas la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges si l'une des boucles est retirée. Fixer une seule boucle pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de freinage brusque ou de collision.

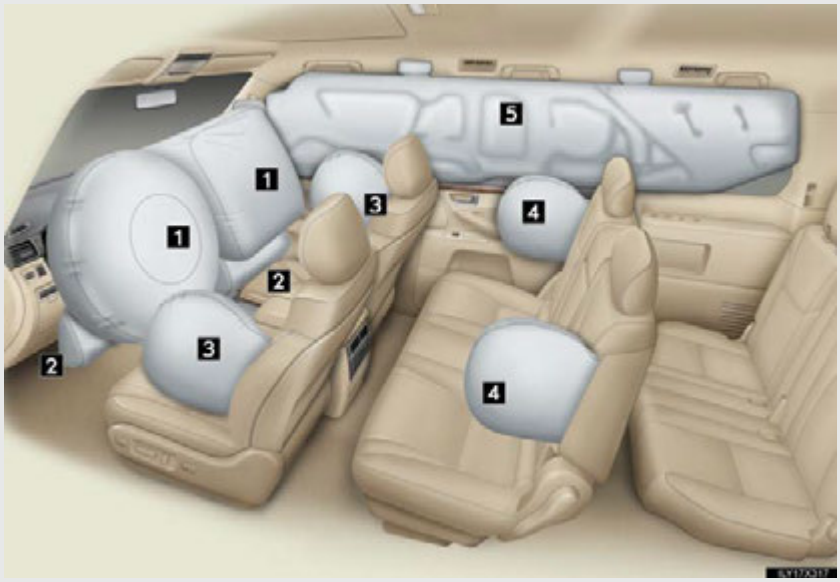
Dommages et usure de la ceinture de sécurité

Vérifiez périodiquement le système de ceintures de sécurité. Assurez-vous qu'il n'y a pas de coupures, d'effilochures ni de pièces desserrées. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité endommagée avant qu'elle soit remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité endommagée ne peut pas protéger les occupants contre des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

Les coussins gonflables SRS se déploient lorsque le véhicule subit certains types d'impacts violents pouvant blesser gravement les passagers. Ils fonctionnent en conjonction avec les ceintures de sécurité afin de réduire les risques de blessures graves, voire mortelles.



▶ Coussins gonflables SRS avant

1 Coussin gonflable SRS du conducteur/coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant
Peut protéger la tête et la poitrine du conducteur et du passager avant contre les impacts avec des composants intérieurs.

2 Coussins gonflables SRS de protection des genoux
Peuvent protéger le conducteur et le passager avant.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Coussins gonflables SRS latéraux et en rideau

3 Coussins gonflables SRS latéraux avant
Peuvent protéger le torse des occupants des sièges avant.

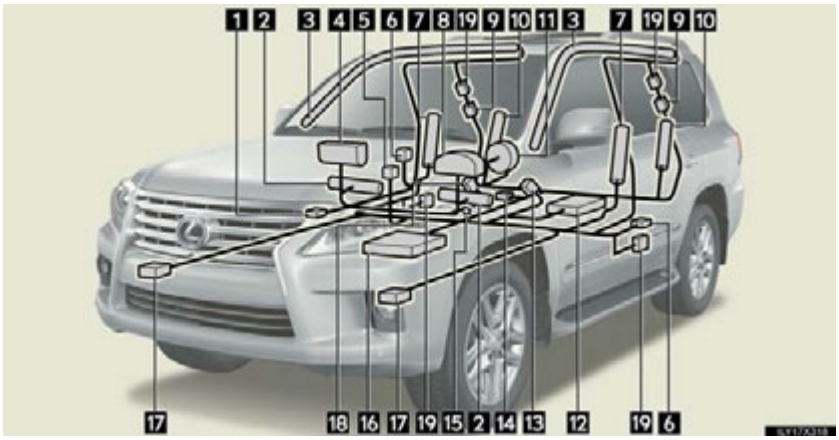
4 Coussins gonflables SRS latéraux arrière
Peuvent protéger le torse des occupants de la deuxième rangée de sièges latéraux.

5 Coussins gonflables SRS en rideau

- Peuvent surtout protéger la tête des occupants des sièges avant.
- Peuvent surtout protéger la tête des occupants de la deuxième rangée de sièges latéraux.
- Peuvent surtout protéger la tête des occupants de la troisième rangée de sièges.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Composants du système de coussins gonflables



1 Système de classification de l'occupant du siège du passager avant (ECU et capteurs)
2 Coussins gonflables de protection des genoux
3 Coussins gonflables en rideau
4 Coussin gonflable du passager avant
5 Voyants AIR BAG ON et AIR BAG OFF
6 Capteurs de choc latéral (portière avant)
7 Coussins gonflables latéraux (sièges avant)
8 Lampes témoins SRS et "RSCA OFF"
9 Capteurs de choc latéral (arrière)
10 Coussins gonflables latéraux (deuxième rangée de sièges latéraux)
11 Coussin gonflable du conducteur
12 Capteur de position de siège du conducteur
13 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du conducteur
14 Capteur de sûreté (arrière)
15 Contacteur de désactivation des coussins gonflables en rideau en cas de tonneaux
16 Module de capteur de coussin gonflable
17 Capteurs de choc avant
18 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du passager avant
19 Limiteurs de force et dispositifs de tension des ceintures de sécurité

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Votre véhicule est doté de COUSSINS GONFLABLES ÉVOLUÉS dont la conception s'appuie sur les normes de sécurité des véhicules à moteur américains (FMVSS208). Le module de capteur de coussin gonflable (ECU) contrôle le déploiement des coussins gonflables en fonction des informations obtenues des capteurs et d'autres éléments affichés dans le diagramme des composants du système ci-dessus. Ces informations comprennent des données relatives à la gravité de l'impact et aux passagers. Au moment du déploiement des coussins gonflables, une réaction chimique se produit dans les gonfleurs et les coussins gonflables se remplissent rapidement d'un gaz non toxique pour limiter le mouvement des occupants.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS

Observez les précautions suivantes en ce qui concerne les coussins gonflables SRS.
Les négliger pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité de la manière appropriée.
  Les coussins gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs supplémentaires qui doivent être utilisés de concert avec les ceintures de sécurité.
- Le coussin gonflable SRS du conducteur se déploie avec une force considérable et peut occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, notamment lorsque le conducteur se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. La National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA"), aux États-Unis, fait les recommandations suivantes :

La zone à risque d'un coussin gonflable côté conducteur couvre 2 à 3 in. (50 à 75 mm) de la zone de déploiement du coussin gonflable. Pour assurer une marge de sécurité suffisante, restez à 10 in. (250 mm) du coussin gonflable. Cette distance est mesurée depuis le centre du volant jusqu'à votre sternum. Si vous vous tenez à moins de 10 in. (250 mm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de plusieurs manières :

- Reculez votre siège à la position maximale vous permettant d'atteindre encore aisément les pédales.
- Inclinez légèrement le dossier.
  Même si les véhicules sont conçus différemment, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent maintenir une distance de 10 in. (250 mm), même si le siège se trouve complètement vers l'avant, simplement en inclinant un peu le dossier du siège vers l'arrière. Si la visibilité avant est moindre après avoir incliné le dossier du siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et non glissant pour être assis plus haut ou relevez le siège si cette option est disponible sur votre véhicule.
- Si votre volant est réglable en hauteur, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela vous permet d'orienter le coussin gonflable vers votre poitrine plutôt que vers la tête et le cou.

Le siège doit être réglé de la manière recommandée ci-dessus par la NHTSA, tout en gardant le contrôle des pédales et du volant, et la vue sur les commandes du bloc d'instrumentation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



- Si la rallonge de ceinture de sécurité a été reliée à la boucle des ceintures de sécurité des sièges avant sans avoir été attachée à la plaque de blocage des ceintures de sécurité, les coussins gonflables SRS avant considéreront que le conducteur et le passager avant portent tout de même leur ceinture même si elles ne sont pas attachées. Les coussins gonflables SRS avant peuvent alors ne pas s'activer correctement lors d'une collision, ce qui représente un risque de blessures graves, voire mortelles. Bouclez toujours votre ceinture de sécurité lorsque vous utilisez la rallonge.
- Le coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant se déploie également avec une force considérable et peut occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, notamment lorsque le passager avant se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. Le siège du passager avant doit se trouver le plus loin possible du coussin gonflable et le dossier doit être réglé de manière à ce que le passager avant soit assis bien droit.
- Le déploiement d'un coussin gonflable risque d'infliger des blessures graves, voire mortelles, aux bébés et aux enfants mal assis ou mal attachés. Un bébé ou un enfant trop petit pour utiliser une ceinture de sécurité doit être correctement retenu à l'aide d'un dispositif de retenue pour enfants. Lexus recommande vivement de placer et d'attacher correctement tous les bébés et tous les enfants sur les sièges arrière du véhicule à l'aide de dispositifs de retenue adaptés. Les sièges arrière sont plus sécuritaires pour les bébés et les enfants que le siège du passager avant.
- Ne placez jamais un dispositif de retenue pour enfants de type dos à la route sur le siège du passager avant, même si la lampe témoin AIR BAG OFF s'allume. En cas d'accident, la force et la vitesse de déploiement du coussin gonflable du passager avant sont telles qu'elles pourraient infliger à l'enfant des blessures graves, voire mortelles, si le dispositif de retenue pour enfants de type dos à la route était installé sur le siège du passager avant.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



● Ne vous asseyez pas sur le bord du siège et ne vous appuyez pas sur le tableau de bord.



● Ne laissez pas un enfant se tenir face au coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant ou s'asseoir sur les genoux d'un passager avant.

● Ne laissez pas les occupants du siège avant tenir des objets sur leurs genoux.



● Ne vous appuyez pas sur la portière ou sur le longeron du toit, ni sur les montants avant, centraux ou arrière.



● Ne laissez personne s'agenouiller face à la portière sur le siège du passager ni sortir la tête ou les mains à l'extérieur du véhicule.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS





- Ne fixez et n'appuyez rien sur le tableau de bord, le tampon de volant ou la partie inférieure du bloc d'instrumentation.
  Ces objets peuvent se transformer en projectiles lorsque les coussins gonflables SRS du conducteur, du passager avant ou de protection des genoux se déploient.
- Ne fixez rien sur les portières, le pare-brise, les glaces latérales, les montants avant, centraux et arrière, le longeron du toit ou la poignée de maintien.
- N'accrochez pas de cintres ni d'autres objets rigides sur les crochets porte-vêtements. Tous ces objets pourraient se transformer en projectiles et vous occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS en rideau.
- Si un recouvrement de vinyle est placé sur la zone de déploiement du coussin SRS de protection pour les genoux, veillez à le retirer.
- N'utilisez pas d'accessoires recouvrant les parties du siège où les coussins gonflables SRS latéraux se déploient, car ceux-ci pourraient nuire au déploiement de ces coussins.
- Ne frappez pas et n'appliquez pas une pression importante à l'emplacement des composants de coussins gonflables SRS.
  Ces actions peuvent entraîner un mauvais fonctionnement des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Ne touchez à aucun composant des coussins gonflables SRS immédiatement après leur déploiement (gonflage), car ils pourraient être chauds.
- Si vous avez de la difficulté à respirer après le déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS, ouvrez une portière ou une glace pour laisser entrer l'air, ou quittez le véhicule si vous pouvez le faire en toute sécurité. Dès que possible, nettoyez tous les résidus afin d'éviter les irritations cutanées.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS

- Si les emplacements de stockage des coussins gonflables SRS, notamment le tampon de volant et les garnitures des montants avant et arrière, sont endommagés ou fissurés, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Lexus.

Modification et mise au rebut des composants du système de coussins gonflables SRS

Ne mettez pas le véhicule au rebut et n'effectuez aucune des modifications suivantes sans d'abord consulter votre concessionnaire Lexus.
Les coussins gonflables SRS pourraient fonctionner de manière incorrecte ou se déployer (gonfler) accidentellement, ce qui serait susceptible d'occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Installation, retrait, démontage et réparation des coussins gonflables SRS
- Réparations, modifications, retrait ou remplacement du volant, du bloc d'instrumentation, du tableau de bord, des sièges ou du capitonnage des sièges, des montants avant, latéraux ou arrière et du longeron du toit
- Réparations ou modifications de l'aile ou du pare-chocs avant, ou du côté de l'habitacle
- Installation d'une protection de calandre (barre safari, barre kangourou, etc.), de lames de déneigement ou de treuils
- Modifications au système de suspension du véhicule
- Installation d'appareils électroniques tels qu'un émetteur-récepteur radio ou un lecteur de CD
- Modifications à votre véhicule pour une personne aux capacités physiques réduites

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Désactivation des coussins gonflables en rideau si le véhicule fait des tonneaux



ON/OFF (maintenez enfoncé pendant quelques secondes)

Le voyant RSCA OFF s'allume (seulement lorsque le contacteur "ENGINE START STOP" est en mode IGNITION ON).

La fonction de détection de roulis des coussins gonflables en rideau et des dispositifs de tension des ceintures de sécurité se réactivera automatiquement chaque fois que le contacteur "ENGINE START STOP" sera placé en mode IGNITION ON.

⚠ ATTENTION

En conduite normale

Assurez-vous que la lampe témoin RSCA OFF n'est pas allumée. Si elle reste allumée, le coussin gonflable en rideau ne se déploiera pas en cas d'accident, ce qui pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

Abbreviation list 940

Alphabetical index..... 942

What to do if... 952

For information regarding the navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
4WD	Four Wheel Drive
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AHC	Active Height Control Suspension
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift control
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
AVS	Adaptive Variable Suspension
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECT	Electronic Controlled Transmission
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Rating
GCWR	Gross Combination Weight Rating
GPS	Global Positioning System
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
HI	High
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
INT	Intermittent

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
L	Left
LATCH	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LO	Low
M + S	Mud and Snow
MMT	Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
PCS	Pre-Collision System
PWR	Power
RSCA	Roll Sensing of Curtain Shield Airbag
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring (Warning) System
TRAC	Traction Control
TWR	Trailer Weight Rating
VGRS	Variable Gear Ratio Steering
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Alphabetical index

A

A/C
- Air conditioning filter 781
- Automatic air conditioning system 444

ABS 349

Active head restraint 69

Active height control suspension 320

Active traction control 349

Adaptive Front-lighting System 210

Adaptive Variable Suspension 331

AFS 210

AHC 320

Air conditioning filter 781

Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 781
- Automatic air conditioning system 444

Airbags
- Airbag operating conditions 130
- Airbag precautions for your child 134
- Airbag warning light 827
- Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 130
- Curtain shield airbag precautions 134
- Front passenger occupant classification system 140
- General airbag precautions 134
- Locations of airbags 126
- Modification and disposal of airbags 138
- Proper driving posture 124, 134
- Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch 139
- Side airbag operating conditions 130
- Side airbag precautions 134
- SRS airbags 126
- SRS airbags instructions for Canadian owners 929

Alarm 121

Antenna 501

Anti-lock brake system 349

Armrest 712

Assist grips 713

Ashtrays 703

Audio system
- Antenna 501
- AUX port 574
- CD player 507
- DVD player 507
- iPod 562
- MP3/WMA disc 509
- Optimal use 572
- Radio 487
- Steering wheel audio switch 576
- USB memory 552

Automatic air conditioning system 444

Automatic headlight leveling system 212

Automatic light control system 208

Automatic transmission
- Automatic transmission 181
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 870
- Paddle shift switches 184
- "S" mode 186

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

AUX port 574
Auxiliary box 697
AVS 331

B
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 808
Wattage 896
Back door
Back door 56
Wireless remote control key 49
Battery
If the vehicle has discharged battery 875
Preparing and checking before winter 376
Bluetooth® audio 541
Bluetooth® phone 616
Bottle holder 696
Brake
Fluid 894
Parking brake 190
Brake assist 349
Break-in tips 167
Brightness control
Instrument light control 194

C
Care
Exterior 734
Interior 737
Seat belts 738
Cargo capacity 368
Cargo hooks 716
CD player 507
Center differential lock/unlock switch 332
Chains 376
Child restraint system
Booster seats, definition 146
Booster seats, installation 151
Convertible seats, definition 146
Convertible seats, installation 151
Infant seats, definition 146
Infant seats, installation 151
Installing child restraint systems with LATCH system 152
Installing child restraint systems with seat belts 154
Installing child restraint systems with top tether strap 159
Child safety
Airbag precautions 134
Battery precautions 763, 877
Child-protectors 53
Child restraint system 146
Heated steering wheel precautions 707
How your child should wear the seat belt 95
Installing child restraints 151
Moon roof precautions 115
Power window lock switch 108
Power window precautions 110
Removed key battery precautions 785
Seat belt precautions 96
Seat heater precautions 711
Child-protectors 53
Cigarette lighter 704

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning
- Exterior ... 734
- Interior ... 737
- Seat belts ... 738

Clock ... 415
Condenser ... 758
Console box ... 692
Cool box ... 699
Cooling system
- Engine overheating ... 878

Crawl Control ... 337
Cruise control ... 232, 236
Cup holder ... 694
Curtain shield airbags ... 126
Customizable features ... 912

D

Daytime running light system ... 211
Defogger
- Rear window ... 460
- Side mirror ... 460

Dimension ... 886
Dinghy towing ... 401
Display
- Crawl Control display ... 337
- Dynamic radar cruise control ... 236
- Intuitive parking assist system display ... 252
- Multi-information display ... 200
- Shift position and shift range ... 184, 186
- Trip information ... 201
- Warning message ... 837

Do-it-yourself maintenance ... 747
Door courtesy lights
- Door courtesy lights ... 686
- Wattage ... 896

Door lock
- Back door ... 56
- Side door ... 52
- Wireless remote control key ... 49

Doors
- Door glasses ... 108
- Door lock ... 35, 49, 52
- Side mirrors ... 104

Driver's seat belt reminder light ... 829
Driving
- Break-in tips ... 167
- Correct posture ... 124
- Off-road precautions ... 363
- Procedures ... 166
- Winter driving tips ... 376

Driving position memory ... 83
DVD player ... 507
Dynamic radar cruise control ... 236

E

Eco driving ... 168
EDR ... 25
Electronic key
- If your electronic key battery is discharged ... 784

Emergency flashers ... 816
Emergency, in case of
- If the electronic key does not operate properly ... 872
- If the engine will not start ... 868
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" ... 870
- If the vehicle has discharged battery ... 875
- If the warning buzzer sounds ... 826

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the warning light turns on 826
If the warning message is displayed 837
If you have a flat tire 854
If you lose your keys 871
If you think something is wrong 824
If your vehicle becomes stuck 881
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 883
If your vehicle needs to be towed 817
If your vehicle overheats 878
Engine
Compartment 751
Engine switch 177
Hood 750
How to start the engine 177
Identification number 887
If the engine will not start 868
Ignition switch 177
Overheating 878
Engine coolant
Capacity 891
Checking 757
Preparing and checking before winter 376
Engine coolant temperature gauge 192
Engine immobilizer system 119
Engine oil
Capacity 889
Checking 753
Preparing and checking before winter 376
Engine switch 177
Event data recorder 25

F

First-aid kit holder 717
Floor mats 714
Fluid
Brake 894
Power steering 894
Washer 765
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 810
Switch 220
Wattage 896
Four-wheel drive system 332
Front passenger occupant classification system 140
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 829
Front seats
Adjustment 67
Driving position memory 83
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 807
Wattage 896

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel
- Capacity ... 888
- Fuel gauge ... 192
- Fuel pump shut off system ... 825
- Information ... 897
- Refueling ... 116
- Type ... 888

Fuel door ... 116
Fuel filler door ... 116
Fuel pump shut off system ... 825
Fuses ... 786

G
Garage door opener ... 718
Gauges ... 192
Glove box ... 691
Glove box light ... 691

H
Hands-free system ... 616
Hazard light
- Switch ... 816

Head restraints
- Adjusting ... 87

Headlight cleaner ... 231
Headlights
- Replacing light bulbs ... 805
- Switch ... 208
- Wattage ... 896

Heaters
- Sear heaters ... 709
- Side mirror ... 460
- Steering wheel ... 707

Hill-start assist control ... 349
Hood ... 750

Hooks
- Cargo hook (Tie-down hooks) ... 716
- Tie-down hooks ... 716

Horn ... 191

I
I/M test ... 746
Identification
- Engine ... 887
- Vehicle ... 887

Ignition
- Engine switch ... 177
- Keys ... 30
- Ignition switch ... 177

Ignition switch ... 177
Illuminated entry system ... 689
Indicator lights ... 196
Inside rear view mirror ... 102
Instrument panel light control ... 194
Interior lights
- Interior lights list ... 686
- Switch ... 687
- Wattage ... 896

Intuitive parking assist ... 251

J
Jack
- Vehicle-equipped jack ... 854

Jack handle ... 857

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

K
Keyless entry 35
Keys
Electronic key 30
If you lose your keys 871
If your electronic key battery is discharged 784, 872
Ignition switch 177
Keyless entry 35
Key number 32
Keys 30
Mechanical key 30
Wireless remote control key 49
Knee airbags 126

L
Language
Multi-information display 922
License plate lights 810
Light bulbs
Replacing 803
Wattage 896
Lights
Door courtesy lights 686
Emergency flasher switch 816
Fog light switch 220
Hazard light switch 816
Headlights switch 208
Interior light switch 687
Personal light switch 688
Replacing light bulbs 803
Turn signal lever 189
Vanity lights 702
Wattage 896
Load capacity 375
Lock steering column 179
Luggage compartment lights
Switch 689
Wattage 896

M
Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 747
General maintenance 743
Maintenance data 886
Maintenance requirements 740
Reset the maintenance data 741
Meter
Instrument panel light control 194
Meters 192
Micro dust and pollen filter 450
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 102
Mirror position memory 83
Side mirrors 104
Vanity mirrors 702
Moon roof 111
MP3 disc 509
Multi-information display 200
Multi Terrain ABS 349
Multi-terrain Select 344

N
Navigation System*
Noise from under vehicle 22

O
Odometer 192
Off road precautions 363
Oil
Engine oil 753

*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Opener
Back door ... 56
Fuel filler door ... 116
Hood ... 750
Outside rear view mirrors
Adjusting and folding ... 104
Outside temperature display ... 455
Overhead console ... 693
Overheating, Engine ... 878

P
Paddle shift switches ... 184, 186
Parking brake ... 190
Parking lights
Switch ... 208
PCS ... 357
Personal lights
Switch ... 688
Power back door ... 57
Power outlet ... 705
Power steering
Fluid ... 894
Power windows ... 108
Pre-collision system ... 357

R
Radar cruise control ... 236
Radiator ... 758
Radio ... 487
Rear air conditioning system ... 456
Rear seat
Adjustment ... 71
Folding the third seats ... 75
Tumbling second seats ... 72
Rear seat entertainment system ... 579
Rear step bumper ... 58
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 809
Wattage ... 896
Rear view monitor system ... 262
Rear window defogger ... 460
Rear window wiper ... 228
Replacing
Key battery ... 784
Fuses ... 786
Light bulbs ... 803
Tires ... 854
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners ... 926
Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required ... 741
Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch ... 139
Roof luggage carrier ... 368

S
Safety Connect ... 726
Seat belts
Adjusting the seat belt ... 91
Automatic Locking Retractor ... 95
Child restraint system installation ... 151
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts ... 738
Emergency Locking Retractor ... 95
How to wear your seat belt ... 91
How your child should wear the seat belt ... 95
Pre-collision seat belts ... 94
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use ... 97

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reminder light 829
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners 927
Seat belt pretensioners 94
Seat heaters 709
Seat ventilators 709
Seats
Adjustment precautions 70
Child restraint system installation 151
Cleaning 737
Driver's seat position memory 83
Front seat adjustment 67
Head restraint 87
Properly sitting in the seat 124
Rear seat adjustment 71
Seat heaters and ventilators 709
Service reminder indicators 196
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 181
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 870
Side airbags 126
Side marker light 208
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding 104
Mirror position memory 83
Smart access system with push-button start
Entry function 35
Starting the engine 177
"SOS" button 726
Spare tire
Inflation pressure 895
Storage location 854
Spark plug 891
Specifications 886
Speedometer 192
Steering
Adjustment 100
Column lock release 179
Heated steering wheel 707
Steering wheel Audio switches 576
Steering wheel position memory 83
Stop lights 810
Storage compartment 716
Storage feature 690
Storage precautions 372
Stuck
If your vehicle becomes stuck 881
Sun visors 701
Sunshade
Roof 112
Switch
DISP switch 201
ECT switch 183
Emergency flasher switch 816
Engine switch 177
Fog light switch 220
Hazard light switch 816
Heated steering wheel switch 707
Height select switch 320
Ignition switch 177
Light switches 208

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Paddle shift switches 184, 186
Power back door 57
Power door lock switch 52
Power window switch 108
Rear window wiper and washer switch 228
VIEW switch 303
Window lock switch 108
Wipers and washer switch 222, 228

T

Tachometer 192
Tail lights
Switch 208
Talk switch 445, 464, 635
Telephone switch 616
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 121
Engine immobilizer system 119
Tie-down hooks (Cargo hook) 716
Tire inflation pressure 775
Tire pressure warning system 766
Tire information
Glossary 906
Size 895
Tire identification number 902
Uniform tire quality grading 904
Tires
Chains 376
Checking 766
If you have a flat tire 854
Inflation pressure 775
Replacing 859
Rotating tires 766
Size 895
Snow tires 376
Spare tire 854
Tools 854
Total load capacity 886
Touch screen 404
Towing
Dinghy towing 401
Emergency towing 820
Trailer towing 381
TRAC 349
Traction control 349
Trailer towing 381
Trip information display 201
Trip meter 192
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 807, 809
Switch 189
Wattage 896

V

Vanity lights
Vanity lights 702
Wattage 896
Vanity mirrors 702
Variable gear ratio steering 349
Vehicle data recordings 24
Vehicle identification number 887
Vehicle load limits 375
Vehicle stability control 349
Ventilators 709
VGRS 349
Voice command switch* 445, 464, 635
VSC 349

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

W

Warning buzzers
Brake system 826
Open door 828
Seat belt reminder 829
Warning lights
"AFS OFF" indicator 828
Anti-lock brake system 827
Brake system 826
Charging system 826
Fuel level 828
Malfunction indicator lamp 827
Master warning light 830
Open door 828
Pre-collision system 827
Seat belt reminder light 829
Slip indicator light 828
SRS airbags 827
Tire pressure 829
Unengaged "Park" 829
Warning messages 837
Warning reflector holder 717
Washer
Checking 765
Preparing and checking before winter 376
Switch 222, 228
Washing and waxing 734
Weight 886
Wheels 779
Wide view front & side monitor 303
Window glasses 108
Window lock switch 108
Windows
Power windows 108
Rear window defogger 460
Washer 222, 228
Windshield wipers 222
Windshield wiper de-icer 461
Wireless remote control key
Replacing the battery 784
Wireless remote control key 49
WMA disc 509

*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

What to do if...



A tire punctures

P. 854 If you have a flat tire



The engine does not start

P. 868 If the engine will not start
P. 119 Engine immobilizer system
P. 875 If the battery is discharged



The shift lever cannot be moved out

P. 870 If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"



The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone



Steam can be seen coming from under the hood

P. 878 If your vehicle overheats



The key is lost

P. 871 If you lose your keys



The battery runs out

P. 875 If the battery is discharged



The doors cannot be locked

P. 52 Side doors
P. 56 Back door



The horn begins to sound

P. 121 Alarm



The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand

P. 881 If the vehicle becomes stuck

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The warning light or indicator light comes on P. 826 If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■Warning lights

BRAKE or	Brake system warning light P. 826	AFS OFF	"AFS OFF" indicator light* P. 828
			Tire pressure warning light P. 829
	Charging system warning light P. 826		Open door warning light P. 828
CHECK or	Malfunction indicator lamp P. 827		Low fuel level warning light P. 828
			Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 829
	SRS warning light P. 827	PASSENGER	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 829
ABS or	ABS warning light P. 827	A/T P	Unengaged "Park" warning light P. 829
			Master warning light P. 830
PCS	Pre-collision system warning light P. 827		Slip indicator light P. 828

*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.



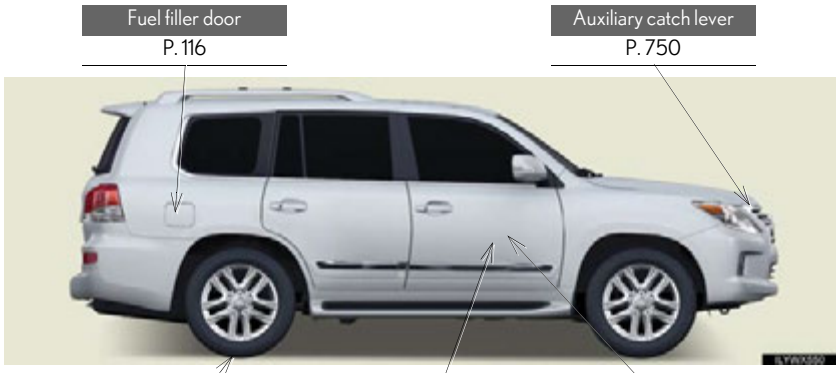
The warning message is displayed P. 837 If a warning message is displayed

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

What to do if...

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P. 888
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 895
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)		qt. (L, Imp.qt.)
	With filter	7.9 (7.5, 6.6)
	Without filter	7.5 (7.1, 6.2)
Engine oil type		P. 889

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS